AL-BAHER

CONNECT

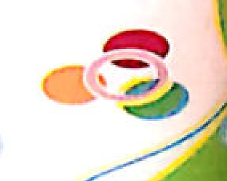
Second Term

الصف السادس الابتدائي



Contents





Reading and Writing Skills

Reading Skills

مهارات القراءة

How to deal with the "Reading Comprehension" Question

كيف تتعامل مع سؤال قطعة الفهم

قطعة الفهم هي عبارة عن فقرة يقوم الطالب بقراءتها ثم يجيب عن بعض الأسئلة:

ثلاثة أسئلة اختيار من متعدد تقيس مدي فهم الطالب لمهارات القراءة التالية:

(تحديد الفكرة العامة في النص - تحديد معاني كلمات أو عبارات في النص - توضيح الفهم لتفاصيل معينة في النص)

ويأتي السؤال بإحدى هذه الصيغ:

- تحديد الفكرة العامة للنص

- This text is about "............................ ".

Or: The (main idea / general idea) of the text is about "............................ ".

Or: The text talks about "............................ ".

- تحديد معاني كلمات أو عبارات في النص

- The underlined word "......................" has the same meaning as "......................" .

Or: The underlined word "......................" is the opposite of the word "......................" .

Or: The underlined word "......................" refers to "......................" .

Or: The underlined word "......................" means "......................" .

- توضيح الفهم لتفاصيل معينة في النص

- سؤالان من الأسئلة التي تبدأ بكلمة استفهام تقيس مدي فهم الطالب لمهارات القراءة التالية:

ويأتي السؤال بإحدى هذه الصيغ:

- تقديم استنتاجات منطقية من النص:

- Infer استنتج - Mention اذكر

- تلخيص التفاصيل والأفكار الداعمة في النص:

- Summarize the main idea of the text.

Writing Skills

مهارات الكتابة

1 *How to write a paragraph:* كيف تكتب فقرة إنشائية

1. اترك مسافة في بداية السطر الأول تقريبًا ١ سم.
2. ابدأ كل جملة بحرف Capital.
3. ضع (.) في نهاية كل جملة.
4. اتبع كل علامات الترقيم.
5. ابدأ جملتك بالفاعل ثم الفعل ونوّع بدايات الجمل.
6. استخدم الزمن المناسب للموضوع.
7. استخدم جمل بسيطة.
8. حسن خطك واترك مسافة بين كل كلمة وأخرى.

2 *How to write an email:* كيف تكتب رسالة بريد إلكتروني

From : عنوان البريد الإلكتروني للمرسل

To : عنوان البريد الإلكتروني للمرسل إليه

Subject : موضوع الرسالة

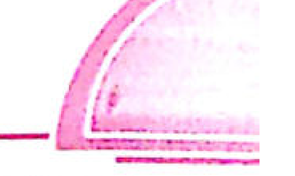
Dear / Hi / Hello اسم المرسل إليه ,
How are you? I'm happy to write this email to you. ← جملة افتتاحية

.... موضوع الرسالة ....

- Write back soon and tell me your news.
- Best wishes. ← جملة ختامية

Yours,
اسم المرسل

Send | A | Saved



3 How to write a blog: كيف تكتب مدونة:

1. اكتب تاريخ اليوم عند بداية كتابة المدونة.
2. قم بكتابة عنوان مناسب لموضوع المدونة.
3. صف الأماكن والأحداث التي مرت عليك .
4. صف ما شعرت به خلال اليوم.
5. اكتب بعض الضمائر الشخصية مثل (I / Me).
6. استخدم بعض الصور لتوضيح الفكرة.
7. اكتب رأيك في الموضوع الذي تتحدث عنه باستخدام (In my opinion) / (I think that).

4 How to write a diary entry: كيف تكتب مذكرة - يوميات:

1) Write the date.	اكتب التاريخ.
2) Start with "Dear Diary".	ابدأ بـ (Dear Diary).
3) Write about how you felt.	اكتب كيف كان شعورك.
4) Use informal language.	استخدام لغة غير رسمية.
5) Use personal pronouns as "I - me"	استخدام ضمائر شخصية مثل (I - me).
6) Describe the (places - events).	صف (الأماكن والأحداث).

5 How to write a text message: كيف تكتب رسالة نصية:

Drear................., — عزيزي ....،

I want to.................

.... موضوع الرسالة ....

....

....

What do you think? — ماذا تعتقد؟

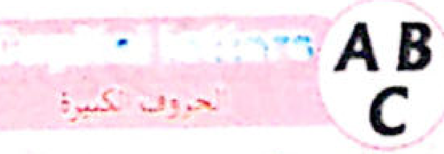
I hope you like my ideas! — أتمنى أن تعجبك أفكاري!

(Your name) — (اسمك)

....

Punctuation Marks

علامات الترقيم



A B C

يوضع في بداية الجملة / أيام الأسبوع / الشهور / اللغات / الجنسيات / أسماء [illegible]
المشهيرة.

1. Ali is from Egypt.
2. I visited the Egyptian Museum in April.
3. Today is Saturday.
4. I am Egyptian and I speak Arabic.



يوضع في نهاية الجملة.

1. She goes to the club every day.
2. I don't like fish.



يوضع في نهاية السؤال.

1. Where are you born?
2. Do you like English?





يوضع في نهاية العبارات أو الجمل التي تعبر عن الترحيب أو التعجب .

- Hi!
- Wow!





يوضع قبل (s) الملكية.
يوضع في الاختصارات.

1. Shahd's dress is red.
2. I'm a student.

Comma

الفصلة السفلى



يوضع عند كتابة قائمة بالأشياء أو العبارات.
يوضع بعد (Yes / No) .
يوضع قبل (but).
يوضع قبل (please) إذا جاءت في نهاية الجملة.

1. I like reading, swimming, and tennis.
2. Yes, of course.
3. I like reading, but I don't like art.
4. Can I have some milk, please?

Unit 7

Amazing artifacts

In this unit, the students will ...

- listen and read about artifacts in the Museum of Ancient History.
- listen, read, research, and write about important ancient artifacts.
- listen to a presentation about Ancient Egyptian metals.
- use the past simple.
- do a quiz about Ancient Egyptian artifacts.
- read about animals in Ancient Egypt.
- use prepositions of place.
- say words with the sound /er/.
- write a fact file about a metal or material in Ancient Egypt.
- research and write display boards for artifacts from Ancient Egypt.

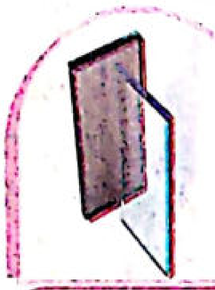
Lesson (1) A VISIT TO THE MUSEUM

استمع وقل.

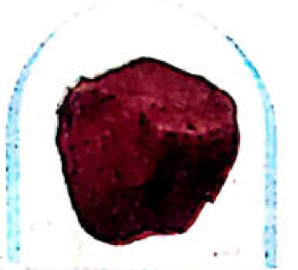
Materials مواد خام




granite
جرانيت



glass
زجاج



clay
صلصال / فخار



gold
ذهب

Key vocabulary كلمات أساسية

artifacts	قطع أثرية (مصنوعات يدوية)	durable	متين
preserve	يحفظ	fascinating	مذهل / خلاب

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

Ancient Egyptians	المصريون القدماء	a visit	زيارة
museum	متحف	materials	مواد خام
guide	يرشد / مرشد	papyrus	ورق البردي
parents	الوالدان	pot	إناء
climate	مناخ	dry	جاف
valuable	ذو قيمة / قيِّم	cold	بارد
today	اليوم	students	طلاب
reason	سبب	wet	رطب
hard	صلب	weather	طقس

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
use	يستخدم	used	used
last	يدوم / يستمر	lasted	lasted
cover	يغطي	covered	covered
enjoy	يستمتع	enjoyed	enjoyed
damage	يضر / يتلف	damaged	damaged

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Lesson (1)

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
know	يعرف	knew	known
build	يبني	built	built
learn	يتعلم	learnt / learned	learnt / learned
make	يصنع	made	made
find	يجد	found	found
keep	يحفظ	kept	kept

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

welcome to	مرحبا بكم في	made of	مصنوع من (مادة لا تتغير)
excited to	متحمس لـ	made from	مصنوع من (مادة تتغير)
damaged by	تَضرَّر بـ	a lot of	الكثير من
close to	قريب من	first of all	أولًا
cover in	يغطى بـ	last forever	يدوم للأبد
happy about	سعيد بشأن	an interesting question	سؤال مثير للاهتمام
work at	يعمل في	Tutankhamun's tomb	مقبرة توت عنخ آمون
good for	جيد لـ / مفيد لـ	in good conditions	في ظروف جيدة
The Museum of Ancient History			متحف التاريخ القديم
Egyptian Eagle Primary School			مدرسة النسر المصري الابتدائية

Study the following:

1 
2 
3 
4 
5 

1. The picture is made of papyrus. الصورة مصنوعة من ورق البردي.
2. The pots are made of glass. الأواني مصنوعة من الزجاج.
3. The statue is made of gold. التمثال مصنوع من الذهب.
4. The temple is made of granite. المعبد مصنوع من الجرانيت.
5. The jar is made of clay. البرطمان مصنوع من الفخار.

Did you know?

An artifact is an object that was made by humans in the past. The Khufu solar ship is an artifact from Ancient Egypt. It is the world's oldest **intact** ship.

القطعة الأثرية هي شيء صنعه البشر في الماضي. مركب الشمس الخاص بالملك خوفو هو قطعة أثرية من مصر القديمة. إنها أقدم سفينة سليمة في العالم.



Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

Mr Tarek : Good morning and welcome to the Museum of Ancient History. My name is Mr Tarek and I am your guide today.

باح الخير ومرحبًا بكم في متحف التاريخ القديم. اسمي السيد طارق وأنا مرشدكم اليوم.

Tamer : Good morning, Mr Tarek. I'm Tamer and this is my sister Tamara. We're students at Egyptian Eagle Primary School, and these are our parents.

باح الخير استاذ طارق. أنا تامر وهذه أختي تمارا. نحن طلاب في مدرسة النسر المصري الابتدائية، وهذان هما والدينا.

Tamara : We're excited to learn more about Ancient Egyptian artifacts

ن متحمسون لمعرفة المزيد عن القطع الأثرية المصرية القديمة.

Mr Tarek : Great! What would you like to know? ظيم! ماذا تريدين أن تعرفي؟

Tamara : Well, first of all, why do we have so many **artifacts**?

سنًا، أولاً وقبل كل شيء، لماذا لدينا الكثير من القطع الأثرية؟

Mr Tarek : That's an interesting question. One reason is the climate We have a hot, dry climate here in Egypt, so artifacts aren't damaged by cold and wet weather. This helps to **preserve** them. The Ancient Egyptians also knew that certain materials could last a long time. That's why they built the Pyramids with **granite**, a very hard and **durable** stone.

هذا سؤال مثير للاهتمام. أحد الأسباب هو المناخ. لدينا مناخ حار وجاف هنا في مصر، لذلك لا تتضرر القطع الأثرية بسبب الطقس البارد والرطب. وهذا يساعد على الحفاظ عليها. عرف المصريون القدماء أيضًا أن بعض المواد الخام يمكن أن تدوم لفترة طويلة. ولهذا السبب بنوا الأهرامات بالجرانيت، وهو حجر شديد الصلابة والمتانة.

Tamer : That's **fascinating**! What other materials did they use?

هذا رائع! ما هي المواد الخام الأخرى التي استخدموها؟

Mr Tarek : They used a lot of **glass**, which lasts forever. They also used clay, which is found close to the River Nile, to make pots.

لقد استخدموا الكثير من الزجاج الذي يدوم إلى الأبد. كما استخدموا الطين الموجود بالقرب من نهر النيل لصنع الأواني.

Tamer : I also heard they used a lot of **gold** in Tutankhamun's tomb.

وسمعت أيضًا أنهم استخدموا الكثير من الذهب في مقبرة توت عنخ آمون.

Mr Tarek : Yes, the Ancient Egyptians liked to use gold because it is valuable, but it is also very durable. When they covered artifacts in gold, they kept them in good condition.

نعم، كان المصريون القدماء يحبون استخدام الذهب لأنه ذو قيمة، ولكنه أيضًا متين للغاية. وعندما غطوا القطع الأثرية بالذهب، احتفظوا بها في حالة جيدة.

Tamer : I'm happy about that! It's exciting to enjoy the things they made.

أنا سعيد بذلك! من المثير الاستمتاع بالأشياء التي صنعوها.

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. We have a hot, ... climate here in Egypt.
   a) wet b) dry c) cold d) cool
2. Artifacts aren't .... by cold and wet weather.
   a) kept b) stayed c) damaged d) built
3. Certain materials could .... a long time.
   a) cast b) past c) fast d) last
4. The Pyramids were built with ....
   a) granite b) gold c) clay d) glass

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Ancient Egyptians built the Pyramids with ....
   a) paper b) clay c) bronze d) granite
2. Ancient Egyptians used gold for ....
   a) artifacts b) arts c) facts d) papyrus
3. Gold is valuable and ....
   a) cheap b) durable c) wet d) cold
4. A hot and dry climate helps to .... artifacts.
   a) preserve b) damage c) sell d) buy
5. The Ancient Egyptians used a lot of .... in Tutankhamun's tomb.
   a) papyrus b) clay c) glass d) gold

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

cheap - kept - clay - valuable - artifacts

The Ancient Egyptians used a lot of glass, which lasts forever. They also used, 1).................... which is found close to the River Nile, to make pots. They also liked to use gold because it is 2).............................. , but it is also very durable. When they covered 3).............................. in gold, they ....them in good condition.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Egyptian artifacts are objects created by the ancient Egyptians. The made many fascinating artifacts that lasted thousands of years. These artifacts include pottery, jewelry, tombs and temples. Artifacts are very important for the information they provide about the history of Egypt. We have a hot, dry climate here in Egypt, so artifacts aren't damaged. This helps to preserve them. The Ancient Egyptians built the Pyramids with granite. They used glass, which lasts forever. They used clay to make pots, too.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The Ancient Egyptians made many .... artifacts
   a) **fascinated** b) **fascinate** c) **fascinating** d) **fascinates**
2. Artifacts are important for the .... they provide
   a) **temples** b) **information** c) **climate** d) **pots**
3. The underlined word "ancient" means very ....
   a) **old** b) **modern** c) **new** d) **long**

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What's the main idea of the text? ....
5. What materials did the Ancient Egyptians use for artifacts? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. to learn - are - We - excited - about - Ancient - Egypt - .

....

2. climate - The Egyptian - good - is - preserving - for - artifacts - .

....

3. you - like - What - would - know - to - ?

....

6 Punctuate the following.

- gold is valuable and durable ....

7 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

A visit to the museum

Guiding elements:

- **Where is the museum?**
- **What artifacts did you see?**
- **How did you feel?**

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

Lesson (2) THEY LOVED ANIMALS

Key vocabulary
كلمات أساسية


baboon
قرد البابون


monkey
قرد


rat
فأر


crocodile
تمساح


hippo
فرس النهر


falcon
صقر


ibis
طائر أبو منجل


snake
ثعبان

Extra vocabulary
كلمات إضافية

birds	طيور	flour	دقيق	cloth	قماش
pets	حيوانات أليفة	bread	خبز	afterlife	الحياة الآخرة
popular	شعبي / محبوب	knowledge	معرفة	dangerous	خطير
favorite	مُفضل	seeds	بذور	almost	تقريبًا
stone	حجر	particularly	وبشكل خاص	common	شائع
person	شخص	object	شئ	alone	بمفرده
oil	زيت	turtle	سلحفاة	reason	سبب

Definitions
تعريفات

- ______ seeds from plants used to make flour and bread — حبوب
- ______ to cover in oils and cloth to preserve for a very long time — يحنط
- ______ using your knowledge to make good decisions — حكمة
- ______ an object made of stone or another material to look like a person or animal — تمثال
- ______ loved something very much — أحبّ بشدة / عشق

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
clean	ينظف	cleaned	cleaned
produce	ينتج	produced	produced
include	يتضمن	included	included
represent	يمثل	represented	represented
believe	يؤمن / يعتقد	believed	believed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
grow	يزرع / ينمو	grew	grown
go	يذهب	went	gone
fall	يقع / يسقط	fell	fallen
teach	يُعلِّم	taught	taught
become	يصبح	became	become
hurt	يؤذي / يؤلم	hurt	hurt

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

fall over	يقع على / يسقط على	as well	أيضًا
cover in	يغطي بـ	as well as	بالإضافة إلى
look after	يعتني بـ	everyday life	الحياة اليومية
free of pests	خالي من الحشرات أو الهوام	a very long time	فترة طويلة جدًا
look like	يشبه	make decisions	يتخذ قرارات
keep it safe	يبقيه آمنًا	a boat ride	رحلة بالقارب
keep birds	يربي طيور	grow up	يكبر
the whole time	طوال الوقت	go hiking	يتنزه سيرًا على الأقدام
had a picnic	قام بنزهه	in bed	في الفراش

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

What was the Ancient Egyptians' favorite animal?

ما هو الحيوان المفضل لدى المصريين القدماء؟

The Ancient Egyptians loved animals and kept many as pets. They particularly **adored** cats, and there was a cat in almost every house. The Ancient Egyptians believed that cats looked after them and kept them safe. They were also good pets because they cleaned themselves and kept the houses free of pests like rats and snakes. This was particularly important for farmers, who produced a lot of **grain**. The rats didn't eat the grain because the cats ate the rats!

أحب المصريون القدماء الحيوانات وقاموا بتربية الكثير منها كحيوانات أليفة. كانوا يعشقون بشكل خاص القطط ، وكان هناك قطة في كل منزل تقريبًا. اعتقد المصريون القدماء أن القطط تعتني بهم وتبقيهم آمنين. لقد كانت أيضًا حيوانات أليفة جيدة لأنّهم قاموا بتنظيف أنفسهم وجعلوا المنازل خالية من الآفات والهوام مثل الفئران والثعابين. كان هذا مهمًا بشكل خاص للمزارعين ، الذين كانوا ينتجون الكثير من الحبوب. لم تأكل الفئران الحبوب لأن القطط أكلت الفئران!

What other animals did the Ancient Egyptians keep?

ما هي الحيوانات الأخرى التي قام بتربيتها المصريون القدماء؟

As well as cats, many people kept monkeys and baboons. Some people even kept crocodiles, hippos, and lions, which were dangerous and difficult to look after. They weren't popular pets!

بالإضافة إلى القطط، ربّى الكثير من الناس القرود والبابون. حتى أن بعض الناس قاموا بتربية التماسيح وأفراس النهر والأسود ، والتي كانت خطيرة ويصعب الاعتناء بها. فلم تكن حيوانات أليفة محبوبة!

Did the Ancient Egyptians keep birds as pets as well?

هل قام المصريون القدماء بتربية الطيور كحيوانات أليفة أيضًا؟

Yes, they did. The Ancient Egyptians loved birds too, especially falcons and the ibis, which represented **wisdom**. There are thousands of **mummified** ibises in Saqqara alone. All these pets weren't only important for the Ancient Egyptians' everyday life–they were also important in the afterlife. It is therefore common to find mummified pets and **statues** of animals in the tombs.

نعم. أحب المصريون القدماء الطيور أيضًا ، وخاصة الصقور و طائر أبو منجل، والذين كانوا يرمزون إلى الحكمة. هناك الآلاف من طيور أبو منجل المحنطة في سقارة وحدها. كل هذه الحيوانات الأليفة لم تكن مهمة فقط للحياة اليومية للمصريين القدماء - بل كانت مهمة أيضًا في الحياة الآخرة. لذلك من الشائع العثور على حيوانات أليفة محنطة وتماثيل للحيوانات في المقابر.

What animals are popular pets in Egypt today?

ما هي الحيوانات الأليفة المشهورة في مصر اليوم؟

Today, cats are still popular pets in Egypt. Other animals that people keep today include turtles, fish, and birds, which are of course much smaller and easier to look after than baboons and crocodiles.

اليوم، لا تزال القطط حيوانات أليفة شائعة في مصر. تشمل الحيوانات الأخرى التي يربيها الناس اليوم السلاحف والأسماك والطيور، والتي هي بالطبع أصغر بكثير وأسهل في الاعتناء بها من قرود البابون والتماسيح.

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.



The Past Simple Tense زمن الماضي البسيط

Form التكوين

- **The second form of the verb.** ريف الثاني للفعل.

Usage الاستخدام

- **We use The Past Simple Tense to express finished action in the past.**

تخدم زمن الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن أحداث انتهت في الماضي.

1 Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

نضيف (d, ed, ied) إلى الفعل المنتظم.

visit → visited need → needed

إذا كان الفعل ينتهي بـ (e) يُضاف (d) فقط.

love → loved like → liked

إذا كان الفعل ينتهي بـ (y) ويسبقه حرف ساكن نحذف (y) ثم نضيف (ied).

try → tried study → studied

إذا كان الفعل ينتهي بـ (y) ويسبقه حرف متحرك يتم إضافة (ed) للفعل.

play → played stay → stayed

إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف ساكن مسبوقًا بحرف متحرك واحد نُضاعف الحرف الأخير.

drop → dropped stop → stopped

2 Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

become → became keep → kept

Keywords الكلمات الدالة

yesterday	أمس	last (year / .....)	العام / .....) الماضي
ago	منذ	in the past	الماضي
Once	ذات مرة	in 2015	عام (٢٠١٥) أي تاريخ ماضي

e.g. I visited my grandmother yesterday.

Ali played with his cousin last Saturday.

Negative النفي

Subject (الفاعل) + didn't + inf. (مصدر الفعل)

e.g. Rats didn't eat the grain. - I didn't grow up in Cairo.

Help your child identify the past simple tense.

طفلك أن يتعرف على زمن الماضي البسيط.

Lesson (2)

estion السؤال

es / No) question: السؤال بـ "هل":

Did + subject (الفاعل) + inf. (مصدر الفعل) ?

Did the Ancient Egyptians only keep cats as pets?
- Yes, they did. - No, they didn't.

n-question: السؤال بـ "كلمة استفهام":

Q.W + did + subject (الفاعل) + inf. (مصدر الفعل) ?

. What did they feed their cats?
Where did he grow up?

Verb to be in the past

Form التكوين

(I / He / She / It / اسم مفرد) + was .....

.g. I was at school yesterday.

(They / You / We / اسم جمع) + were .....

g. They were at school yesterday.

Negative النفي

Subject + (wasn't / weren't) + باقي الجملة

.g. I wasn't a student at the local school.
They weren't popular pets.

Question السؤال

(Yes / No) question: السؤال بـ "هل":

(Was / Were) + subject + باقي الجملة ?

e.g. Were there a lot of mummies?
- Yes, there were. - No, there weren't.

Wh-question: السؤال بـ "كلمة استفهام":

Q.W + (was / were) + subject + باقي الجملة ?

e.g. Which was their favorite animal?

lelp your child identify verb to be in the past.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على "verb to be" في الماضي.



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Did you .... a nice weeke
   a) have b) has c) having d) had
2. I .... to Al-Azhar Park with my family last we
   a) go b) went c) goes d) will go
3. We went on a boat ride. It .... gr
   a) is b) were c) was d) are
4. There .... popular pe
   a) hasn't b) don't c) weren't d) wasn't
5. Rats didn't .... the gr
   a) eat b) eats c) ate d) eating
6. Which .... their favorite anim
   a) are b) was c) were d) have
7. .... the Ancient Egyptians only keep cats as pe
   a) Do b) Does c) Did d) Doing
8. What did they .... their ca
   a) feed b) feeds c) fed d) feeding
9. The Ancient Egyptians .... their pe
   a) love b) loves c) loved d) loving
10. The Ancient Egyptians .... their monkeys different tric
    a) teach b) teaches c) teaching d) taught

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between bracke

1. The crocodiles quickly .... (becoming) dangerous pets in the pa
2. The ibis .... (represent) wisdom in Ancient Egy
3. .... (Does) you go hiking yesterda
4. I .... (grown) up in Alexandria but now I live in Cai
5. Last week, I .... (fall) over and hurt my ar
6. My trip .... (be) good last Frida
7. Yesterday, I fell over and .... (hurts) my le
8. What did the Ancient Egyptians .... (believed) about cat
9. .... (Do) the Ancient Egyptians keep birds as pe
10. What .... (be) the Ancient Egyptians' favorite anim

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

Today, ... are still popular pets in Egypt.

a) cats b) camels c) dogs d) horses

Other animals that people keep today include, turtles, ... and birds.

a) crocodiles b) fish c) monkeys d) cows

Turtles and birds are .... than baboons and crocodiles.

a) bigger b) taller c) smaller d) shorter

I .... cats.

a) hate b) dislike c) have d) adore

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

Did the Ancient Egyptians .... birds?

a) dig b) keep c) take d) stay

What animals are .... pets in Egypt today?

a) popular b) sports c) happy d) sad

Rats and snakes are ....

a) sports b) past c) pests d) insects

" .... " means seeds from plants used to make flour and bread.

a) Wisdom b) Statue c) Grain d) Pet

" .... " is to love something very much.

a) Mummify b) Fall c) Keep d) Adore

" .... " means using your knowledge to make good decisions.

a) Wisdom b) Grain c) Statue d) Falcon

" .... " is to cover in oils and cloth to preserve for a very long time.

a) Fall b) Mummify c) Produce d) Keep

This .... is made of stone.

a) statue b) grain c) wisdom d) glass

The Ancient Egyptians ...... cats, and there was a cat in almost every house.

a) killed b) adored c) hated d) represented

. Farmers produce a lot of ....

a) green b) grown c) grain d) pets

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

hippos - statues - mummified - falcons - wisdom

The Ancient Egyptians loved birds, especially 1)................................ and the ibis, which represented 2).............................. There are thousands of 3)............................ ibises in Saqqara alone. All these pets weren't only important for the Ancient Egyptians' everyday life – they were also important in the afterlife. It is therefore common to find mummified pets and 4)................................ of animals in the tombs.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

The Ancient Egyptians loved animals and kept many as pets. They particularly adored cats, and there was a cat in almost every house. The Ancient Egyptians believed that cats looked after them and kept them safe. They were also good pets because they cleaned themselves and kept the houses free of pests like rats and snakes. This was particularly important for farmers, who produced a lot of grain. The rats didn't eat the grain because the cats ate the rats!

As well as cats, many people kept monkeys and baboons. Some people even kept crocodiles, hippos, and lions, which were dangerous and difficult to look after. They weren't popular pets!

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The Ancient Egyptians loved animals and kept them as ....

 a) bats b) pets c) cats d) rats

2. The cats kept the houses free of ....

 a) subjects b) sports c) pests d) grain

3. Some people kept dangerous animals like ....

 a) donkeys b) parrots c) hens d) lions

B) Answer the following questions.

4. Why didn't the rats eat grain? ....

5. What did the Ancient Egyptians believe about cats? ....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (2)

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. Al-Azhar - went - I - to - Park - with - family - my - .

....

2. didn't - My - up - sister - grow - Cairo - in - .

....

3. bed - stayed - I - in - whole - the - day - .

....

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. I .... (become) a teacher last year.
2. .... (Do) the Ancient Egyptians keep cats as pets?
3. Where did they .... (went) yesterday?
4. They .... (see) a lot of things at the museum last week.
5. When .... (does) they go to Alexandria? - Last summer.
6. Ancient Egyptians .... (believe) that cats kept them safe.
7. I didn't .... (liked) walking.
8. Hani .... (buy) a new car last Friday.
9. I .... (not be) at school last Sunday.
10. Did you .... (had) a nice weekend?

Punctuate the following.

- did you grow up in Cairo

....

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Your favorite animal

Guiding elements:

- What's it? - Why do you keep it? - What do you do with it?

....

....

....

Lesson (3) Part (A) METAL IN ANCIENT EGYPT

Key vocabulary كلمات أساسية

trade	تجارة / يتاجر	stone	حجر	weapon	سلاح
metal	معدن	economy	اقتصاد		

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

country	دولة / بلد	system	نظام	jewelry	مجوهرات
rocks	صخور	chin	ذقن	goods	بضائع
melt	يذوب	whiteboard	سبورة بيضاء	beard	لحية
tool	أداة / عدة يدوية	clock	ساعة حائط	head	رأس
silver	فضة	art	عمل فني	rare	نادر

Definitions تعريفات

economy	the system of how a country's money and goods are produced and used	اقتصاد
metal	something, like gold or iron, that is hard and strong	معدن
trade	buying and selling things between countries	تجارة
weapon	an object used for fighting or hunting animals	سلاح

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
form	يكوّن / يشكل	formed	formed
hunt	يصطاد	hunted	hunted

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
sell	يبيع	sold	sold
buy	يشترى	bought	bought
fight	يقاتل / يتشاجر	fought	fought

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

trade with	يتاجر مع	Tutankhamun's Mask	قناع توت عنخ آمون
form it into	يشكلها إلى	with blue lines	ذات خطوط زرقاء

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

The Ancient Egyptians traded with other countries, and metal was one thing they traded. They first found metal in rocks. Metal was harder than rocks, and they could melt and form it into different shapes. They used metal to make tools and weapons, so that they could hunt on the land, and grow food. Gold was a popular metal for making jewelry and art to sell. Silver was also used, but was rarer. Trade with other countries helped the Ancient Egyptian economy to improve.

كان المصريون القدماء يتاجرون مع الدول الأخرى، وكان المعدن أحد الأشياء التي يتاجرون بها. لقد وجدوا أولاً المعدن في الصخور. كان المعدن أصلب من الصخور، وكان بإمكانهم صهره وتشكيله إلى أشكال مختلفة. استخدموا المعدن لصنع الأدوات والأسلحة، حتى يتمكنوا من الصيد على الأراضي وزراعة الغذاء. كان الذهب معدنًا شائعًا لصنع المجوهرات والأعمال الفنية لبيعها. كما تم استخدام الفضة أيضًا، ولكنها كانت نادرة. ساعدت التجارة مع الدول الأخرى الاقتصاد المصري القديم على التحسن.

Read and match.

1. trade
2. metal
3. weapon
4. economy

a. the system of how a country's money and goods are produced and used.
b. something, like gold or iron, that is hard and strong.
c. buying and selling things between countries.
d. an object used for fighting or hunting animals.

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

One of the most beautiful artifacts from Ancient Egypt is Tutankhamun's mask, which was found in his tomb. The mask is gold, with blue lines between gold lines. Under his chin is a thin beard. There is also a snake on the top of his head.



إن من أجمل القطع الأثرية من مصر القديمة هو قناع توت عنخ آمون الذي عُثر عليه في مقبرته. القناع ذهبي، وبه وجود خطوط زرقاء بين الخطوط الذهبية. وتحت ذقنه لحية رقيقة. يوجد أيضًا ثعبان في أعلى رأسه.

Prepositions of place

حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان

We use prepositions of place to say where things are:

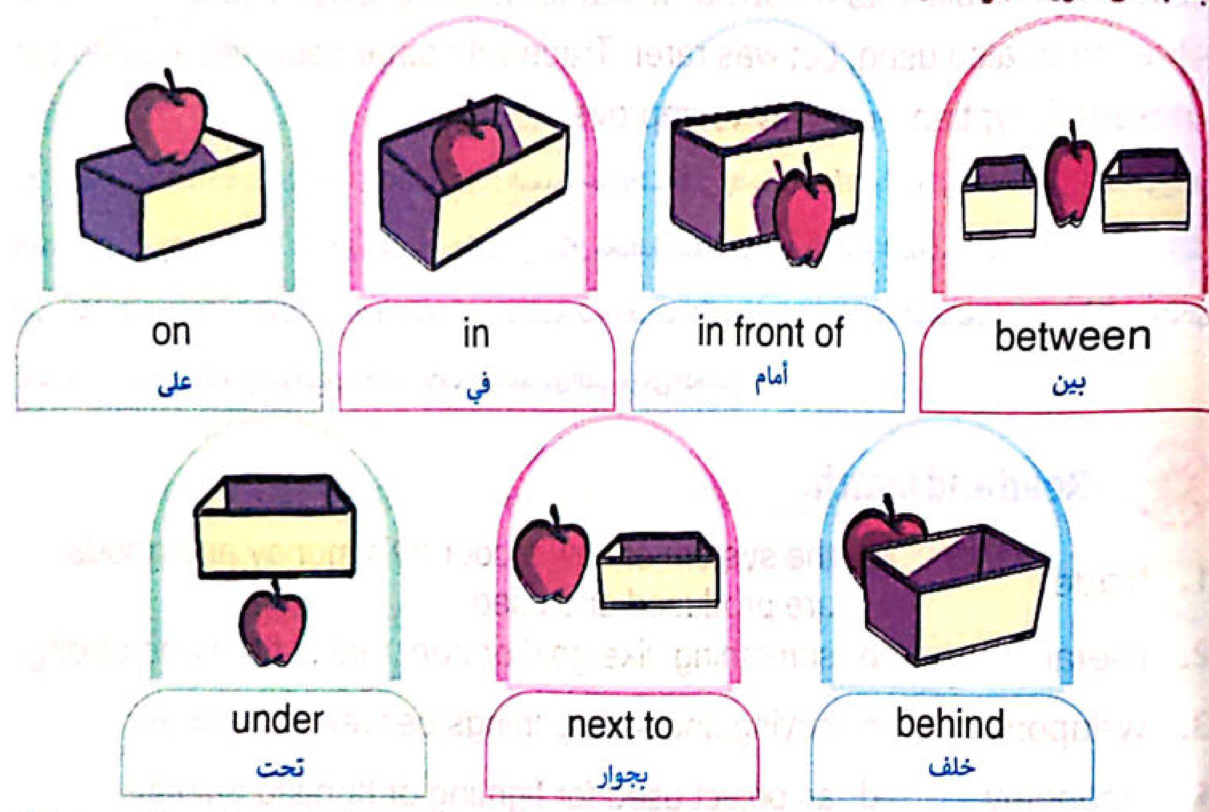
تخدم حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان لنخبر عن مكان الأشياء:

e.g. The Ancient Egyptians first found metal **in** the rocks.

They could hunt and grow things **on** the land.

Here are some common prepositions of place:

ك بعض حروف جر المكان الشائعة:



To ask about places:

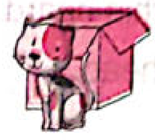
للسؤال عن الأماكن:

Where ....? (أين ....؟)

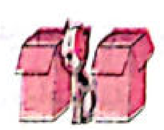
e.g. Where is the cat?
- It's **on** the box.



e.g. Where is the cat?
- It's **in front of** the box.



e.g. Where is the cat?
- It's **between** the boxes.



Help your child identify prepositions of place.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان.



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The Ancient Egyptians first found metal .... the rocks.
   a) behind b) in front of c) in d) at
2. The apple is .... to the box.
   a) front b) next c) behind d) on
3. The cat is .... of the chair.
   a) behind b) on c) in front d) next
4. He has a thin beard .... his chin.
   a) between b) front c) under d) next to
5. There is a snake .... the top of Tutankhamun's head.
   a) in b) on c) to d) behind
6. I can see an apple .... the table and the box.
   a) in b) in front c) next d) between
7. There is a boy .... the door, so I can't see him.
   a) next to b) behind c) in front of d) in

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. I like walking .... (on) the fresh air.
2. There is an apple .... (front) to the box.
3. I can see a book .... (next to) the table and the desk.
4. The apple is .... (behind) of the box.
5. There's a cap .... (in) the top of his head.
6. Ali is sitting next .... (of) his friend.
7. There is a pen .... (front) the books.
8. My brother always puts his shoes .... (in) the chairs.

Lesson (3) Part (B) METAL IN ANCIENT EGYPT

Key vocabulary كلمات أساسية

golden touch	لمسة ذهبية	trip over	يطأ بقدمه على/ يدوس على
tears	دموع	hug	يحتضن

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

king	ملك	human	إنسان	castle	قلعة
unkind	قاسي	rich	غني	sick	مريض
goat	عنزة	rose garden	حديقة زهور	precious	ثمين

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
touch	يلمس	touched	touched
celebrate	يحتفل	celebrated	celebrated
save	ينقذ	saved	saved
change	يغير	changed	changed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
feel	يشعر	felt	felt
leave	يغادر	left	left
lose	يفقد	lost	lost
give	يعطى	gave	given
take	يأخذ	took	taken

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

get a reward	يحصل على مكافأة	change back into	يغير ... إلى ما كان عليه
turn to / into	يتحول إلى	ask for a special meal	يطلب وجبة مميزة
care about	يعتني بـ	strange - looking goat	عنزة غريبة الشكل
come true	يتحقق	It looked very sick	بدت مريضة جدًا

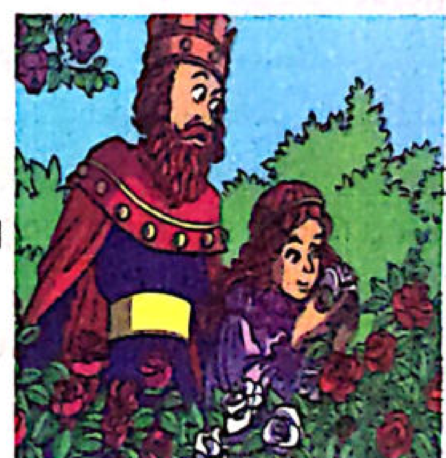
Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

KING MIDAS AND THE GOLDEN TOUCH



الملك ميداس واللمسة الذهبية

Many years ago, there lived a king called King Midas. He loved three things more than anything else: his daughter, Marigold, his rose garden, and gold. His favorite thing was to spend time in his garden with Marigold. But he also liked to look at all the gold in his castle.

منذ عدة سنوات ، عاش هناك ملك يسمى الملك ميداس. لقد أحب ثلاثة أشياء أكثر من أي شيء آخر: ابنته ، ماري جولد ، وحديقة الزهور، والذهب. وكان الشيء المُفضل لديه هو قضاء بعض الوقت في حديقته مع ماري جولد. لكنه أحب أيضًا أن ينظر إلى كل الذهب في قلعته.

One night, he was walking in his garden when he **tripped over** something on the ground. It was a strange-looking goat. It looked very sick. King Midas was a kind man, so he took the goat into his castle. There, he gave it food and a warm bed. In the morning, the goat felt much better.

في إحدى الليالي ، كان يمشي في حديقته عندما داس على شيء ما على الأرض. كانت عنزة غريبة المظهر. بدت مريضة جدًا. كان الملك ميداس رجلاً لطيفًا ، لذا أخذ العنزه في قلعته. هناك ، أعطاها الطعام وسرير دافئ. في الصباح ، شعرت العنزة بتحسن كبير.

"I would like to thank you, King Midas," said the goat. "What would you like more than anything else in the world?"

King Midas thought for a minute, then said, "I would like everything I touch to turn into gold."

"OK," said the goat, and made the king's wish come true.

قالت العنزة: "أود أن أشكرك أيها الملك ميداس". "ما الذي تُحبه أكثر من أي شيء آخر في العالم؟" فكر الملك ميداس لمدة دقيقة ، ثم قال: "أود أن يتحول كل شيء ألمسه إلى الذهب". قالت العنزة "حسنًا"، وحققت أمنية الملك.

King Midas was very excited. After the goat left, he walked around the castle. When he touched a chair, it turned to gold. When he touched his bed, it turned to gold, too. To celebrate, he asked for a special meal. But when he touched

the food, he couldn't eat it because it turned to gold. Then, he went outsi
into the garden to find Marigold. When he **hugged** her, she also turned
gold!

الملك ميداس متحمسًا جدًا. بعد مغادرة العنزة ، تجول حول القلعة وعندما لمس كرسيًا، تحول إلى ذهب. وعندما لمس سريره،
ول إلى ذهب ، أيضا. ولكي يحتفل بذلك، طلب وجبة خاصة. ولكن عندما لمس الطعام، لم يستطع تناوله لأنه تحول إلى ذهب. ثم
ب للخارج إلى الحديقة ليجد ابنته ماري جولد وعندما عانقها ، تحولت أيضا إلى ذهب!

King Midas started crying. "Please come back, goat!" he said. "I can't los
Marigold."
His **tears** fell on his precious roses and they turned to gold. But he didn't ca
about roses or gold any more – he just wanted to save his daughter.

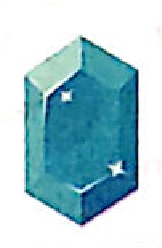
الملك ميداس في البكاء. وقال للعنزة "من فضلك عودي". "أنا لا أستطيع أن أفقد ماري جولد." سقطت دموعه على أزهاره الثمينة
حولت إلى ذهب. لكنه لم يعد يهتم بالورود أو الذهب - لقد أراد فقط إنقاذ ابنته.

The goat heard King Midas and returned to change everything back to ho
it was before.
"Thank you so much!" said King Midas. "I will never think gold is so importa
again!"

معت العنزة الملك ميداس وعادت لتغيير كل شيء إلى ما كان عليه من قبل. قال الملك ميداس "شكراً جزيلاً!" . "لن أعتقد أبدًا أن
ذهب مهم جدًا مرة أخرى!"



bear
دُب



rare
نادر

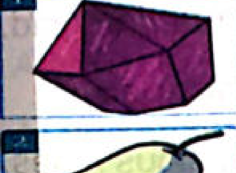


1 Read again and answer T (True) or F (False).

1. King Midas only loved gold.
2. King Midas helped the goat.
3. King Midas was sad when everything changed to gold.
4. The goat didn't change Marigold back into a human.

2 Read again and choose the moral (المغزى) a, b or c.

a. It's good to have a lot of gold and be rich.
b. You will always get a reward if you are unkind.
c. Your family is more important than money and material things.











Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

Help your child identif

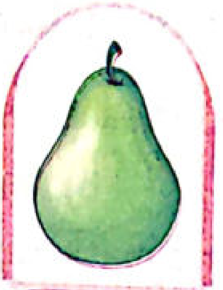
RONUNCIATION



wear
يرتدى



tear
يمزق



pear
كمثرى



share
يشارك



hair
شعر



pair of
زوج من



air
هواء



there
هناك

Study the sound /er/

That gemstone is very **rare** - it's not easy to find.
هذا الحجر الكريم نادر جدًا ، ليس من السهل العثور عليه.

This **pear** looks delicious.
هذه الكمثرى تبدو لذيذة.

There's a **pair** of brown shoes.
هناك زوج من الأحذية البنية.

I like walking in the fresh **air**.
أحب التمشية في الهواء النقي.

Don't pull that. You'll **tear** it!
لا تسحب ذلك. سوف تمزقها!

What do you want to **wear** today?
ماذا تريدين أن ترتدي اليوم؟

... the sound /er/.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف الصوت /er/.

General Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. One of the most beautiful artifacts from Ancient Egypt is Tutankhamun's
   a) mask b) head c) beard d) snake
2. Tutankhamun's mask was found in his ....
   a) pyramid b) tomb c) house d) home
3. The mask is ....
   a) glass b) bronze c) gold d) silver
4. There's also a .... on the top of his he
   a) hippo b) ibis c) falcon d) snake

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The king was walking in his garden when he .... over something on ground.
   a) tripped b) trapped c) hugged d) tore
2. When the king .... his daughter, she also turned to g
   a) hated b) stayed c) produced d) hugged
3. King Midas started crying and his .... fell on his precious ros
   a) eyes b) legs c) tears d) pears
4. The Ancient Egyptians .... with other countr
   a) used b) formed c) felt d) traded
5. The Ancient Egyptians used metals to make tools and ....
   a) weapons b) plants c) flowers d) papyrus
6. Trade with other countries helped the Ancient Egyptian ...... to impro
   a) system b) economy c) rocks d) metals
7. " .... " is something, like gold or iron, that's hard and stro
   a) Stone b) Wood c) Metal d) Paper

Help your child deal with such questions.

طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

castle - gold - rose - daughter - son

Many years ago, there lived a king called King Midas. He loved three things more than anything else: his 1)................................., Marigold, his 2)......................... garden, and 3)............................ His favorite thing was to spend time in his garden with Marigold. But he also liked to look at all the gold in his 4).................................

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

The Ancient Egyptians traded with other countries, and metal was one thing they traded. They first found metal in rocks. Metal was harder than rocks, and they could melt and form it into different shapes. They used metal to make tools and weapons, so that they could hunt on the land, and grow food. Gold was a popular metal for making jewelry and art to sell. Silver was also used, but was rarer. Trade with other countries helped the Ancient Egyptian economy to improve.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The general idea of the text is about ....
   a) metal   b) paper   c) glass   d) rock
2. Metal was .... than rocks.
   a) softer   b) harder   c) smaller   d) bigger
3. Silver was also used, but was ....
   a) harder   b) nicer   c) rarer   d) lighter

B) Answer the following questions.

4. Why did the Ancient Egyptians use metal?

....

5. What was gold used for?

....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. Egyptians - with - The Ancient - traded - countries - other - .

....

2. under - The whiteboard - the - is - clock - .

....

3. next - is - to - the - The library - room - computer - .

....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brack

1. The eraser is .... (behind) to the bo
2. The cat is in front .... (on) the d
3. There's a boy .... (in front of) the door. I can't see h
4. The ball is .... (on) the desk and the ch
5. There is a sofa .... (in front) to the winc
6. The curtains are .... (in) the w
7. The boy is standing .... (next) of the d

7 Punctuate the following.

- they found metal in the rocks

....

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Tutankhamun's mask

Guiding elements:

(beautiful artifacts - found - tomb - made of - snake)

....

....

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lessons (4 & 5)

WRITING: A FACT FILE PROJECT

Key vocabulary كلمات أساسية

iron	حديد	dagger	خنجر	mine	منجم
meteorite	حجز نيزكي	precious	ثمين	Scarab Amulet	تميمة الخنفساء (الجعران)

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

copper	نحاس	rarer	أكثر ندرة	salts	أملاح
bronze	برونز	gallery	معرض فنون	items	أشياء
craftsmen	حرفيين	mirror	مرآة	sheet	لوح / صفيحة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
mine	يستخرج معادن	mined	mined
appear	يظهر	appeared	appeared
decorate	يُزين	decorated	decorated
destroy	يدمر	destroyed	destroyed
melt	ينصهر	melted	melted

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
begin	يبدأ	began	begun
wear	يرتدى	wore	worn
bring	يحضر / يجلب	brought	brought

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

the result of	نتيجة الـ	difficult to use	من الصعب استخدامه
but later on	لكن فيما بعد	the metal of heaven	معدن السماء (الجنة)
with the image of..	على شكل...	agricultural tools	أدوات زراعية
a very hot fire	نار حامية جدًا	bring good fortune	يجلب الحظ السعيد

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

Iron in Ancient Egypt

الحديد في مصر القديمة

When did the Ancient Egyptians start using iron?



meteorites

The Ancient Egyptians started using iron more than 5,000 years ago. Before iron, they worked with copper and bronze.

بدأ المصريون القدماء في استخدام الحديد منذ أكثر من ٥٠٠٠ عام. قبل الحديد، كانوا يعملون بالنحاس والبرونز.

Where did they find iron?

Amazingly, some of their early iron was from **meteorites**. Ancient Egyptian craftsmen made a famous **dagger** for Tutankhamun's tomb from a meteorite. They also mined iron from the ground. But they found it quite difficult to use because it needs a very hot fire to melt, which often wasn't possible.

ومن المثير للدهشة أن بعض الحديد الذى استخدموه في أول الأمر كان من النيازك. صنع الحرفيون المصريون القدماء الخنجر الشهير لمقبرة توت عنخ آمون من الحجر النيزكي. كما قاموا باستخراج الحديد من الأرض. لكنهم وجدوا أنه من الصعب جدًا استخدامه لأنه يحتاج إلى نار حامية جدًا حتى ينصهر، وهو ما لم يكن ممكنًا في كثير من الأحيان.



dagger



mine

Why did they think iron was special?

They thought iron was special because they believed it came from the sky (because of the meteorites). They called it "the metal of heaven". For them, iron was more **precious** than gold because it was rarer.

لقد اعتقدوا أن الحديد مميز لأنهم اعتقدوا أنه يأتي من السماء (بسبب النيازك). أطلقوا عليه اسم "معدن السماء". بالنسبة لهم، كان الحديد أغلى من الذهب لأنه كان أكثر ندرة.

What did they use iron for?

Early on, the Ancient Egyptians used iron for small items, like jewelry. Copper and bronze were common metals for tools because they were easier to find. But later on, iron agricultural tools and weapons began to appear. This was the result of the Ancient Egyptians getting more iron through trade with other countries.

في البداية، استخدم المصريون القدماء الحديد في صناعة الأشياء الصغيرة، مثل المجوهرات. كان النحاس والبرونز من المعادن الشائعة في صناعة الأدوات لأنه كان من السهل العثور عليهم. ولكن فيما بعد بدأ ظهور الأدوات الزراعية والأسلحة الحديدية. وكان هذا نتيجة حصول المصريين القدماء على المزيد من الحديد من خلال التجارة مع الدول الأخرى.

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.



Writing

✲ **When we write a fact file about something, we make notes under the following headings:**

(When....? - Why....? - Where....? - What....?)

عند كتابة ملف حقائق عن شئ ما ندون ملاحظات تحت هذه العناوين (متى ....؟ - لماذا ....؟ - أين ....؟ - ماذا ....؟)

Fact File: Silver in Ancient Egypt

❶ When did the Ancient Egyptians start using silver?

متى بدأ المصريون القدماء في استخدام الفضة؟

They started using silver thousands of years ago.

بدأوا في استخدام الفضة منذ آلاف السنين.

❷ Where did they find the silver?

أين وجدوا الفضة؟

There weren't many silver mines in Egypt, so we think they brought it from other countries through trade.

لم يكن هناك الكثير من مناجم الفضة في مصر، لذلك نعتقد أنهم جلبوها من بلدان أخرى عن طريق التجارة.



❸ What did the Ancient Egyptians use silver for?

فيم استخدم المصريون القدماء الفضة؟



They used it to make jewelry and mirrors. They also used sheet silver to decorate statues.

استخدموها لصنع المجوهرات والمرايا. استخدموا أيضًا صفائح الفضة لتزيين التماثيل.

❹ Why don't we find many silver Ancient Egyptian artifacts?

لماذا لا نجد الكثير من التحف الفضية المصرية القديمة؟

Because silver is not very durable. Sadly, the salts in the tombs destroyed a lot of it, so we cannot see very much of it today.

لأن الفضة ليست متينة للغاية. ومن المؤسف أن الأملاح الموجودة في المقابر دمرت الكثير منها، لذلك لا يمكننا رؤية الكثير منها اليوم.

Note

عند كتابة ملف حقائق اتبع الآتي:

- Research facts. — ابحث عن حقائق.
- Use correct English. — استخدم لغة انجليزية صحيحة.
- Use formal language and the past tense. — استخدم لغة رسمية وزمن الماضي البسيط.
- Divide the text into questions. — قُم بتقسيم النص إلى أسئلة.



Write a fact file about "A metal or material".



Do research on the Scarab Amulet and make notes on:

- What is it?

....

- Where is it from?

....

- How old is it?

....

- What is made of?

....

- What was it used for?

....



Scarab Amulet

Egypt

This scarab amulet is an artifact from Ancient Egypt and is more than three thousand years old. It is made of copper. People wore jewelry with the image of a scarab to protect them and bring them good fortune.

تميمة الخنفساء (الجعران)

مصر

تميمة الجعران هذه من مصر القديمة ويبلغ عمرها أكثر من ثلاثة آلاف عام. وهي مصنوعة من النحاس. كان الناس يرتدون المجوهرات التي تحمل صورة الجعران لحمايتهم وجلب الحظ السعيد لهم.

Help your child write about an artifact.

ساعد طفلك أن يكتب عن قطعة أثرية.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The Ancient Egyptians used iron for .... items.
   a) small   b) big   c) long   d) huge
2. Copper and .... were common metals for tools.
   a) gold   b) silver   c) bronze   d) iron
3. Later on, iron agricultural .... and weapons began to appear.
   a) balls   b) pools   c) walls   d) tools
4. The Ancient Egyptians got more .... through trade.
   a) gold   b) iron   c) rocks   d) silver

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Some of the Ancient Egyptians' iron was from ....
   a) sand   b) glass   c) meteorites   d) salt
2. Ancient Egyptians craftsmen made a famous .... for Tutankhamun's tomb from meteorite.
   a) fork   b) glasses   c) watch   d) dagger
3. The Ancient Egyptians also .... iron from the ground.
   a) mined   b) destroyed   c) appeared   d) decorated
4. Iron was more .... than gold because it was rarer.
   a) cheap   b) precious   c) easy   d) normal

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

protect - jewelry - years - days - copper

The scarab amulet is from Ancient Egypt. It is more than three thousand 1)................................ old. It is made of 2)................................ People wore 3)............................ with the image of a scarab to 4)............................ them and bring them good fortune.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

The Ancient Egyptians started using iron more than 5,000 years ag Before iron, they worked with copper and bronze. Amazingly, some of the early iron was from meteorites. Ancient Egyptian craftsmen made a famous dagger for Tutankhamun's tomb from a meteorite. They als mined iron from the ground. But they found it quite difficult to use becaus it needs a very hot fire to melt, which often wasn't possible.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The text is about .... in Ancient Egy
   a) gold b) silver c) iron d) bronze
2. Before iron, they worked with .... and bronz
   a) iron b) copper c) gold d) salt
3. The Ancient Egyptians mined iron from the ....
   a) sky b) river c) sea d) ground

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What did the Ancient craftsmen make? ....
5. Why was it difficult to use iron? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. and - were - Mum - dad - at - yesterday - work - .

....

2. difficult - Why - was - to - iron - work - with - it - ?

....

3. to - used - They - silver - and - make - jewelry - mirrors - .

....

6 Punctuate the following.

- where did they find iron ....

7 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Silver in Ancient Egypt

Guiding elements:

- When did the Ancient Egyptians use it?
- Where did they find it?
- What did they use it for?

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة

Writing Corner

Ancient Egyptian Artifacts

There are so many artifacts from Ancient Egypt. We have a hot, dry climate here in Egypt, so artifacts aren't damaged by cold and wet weather. This helps to preserve them. The Ancient Egyptians also knew that certain materials could last a long time. That's why they built the Pyramids with granite, a very hard and durable stone. They used other materials like glass, clay and gold too.

Animals in Ancient Egypt

The Ancient Egyptians loved animals and kept many as pets. They particularly adored cats, and there was a cat in almost every house. The Ancient Egyptians believed that cats looked after them and kept them safe. They were also good pets because they cleaned themselves and kept the houses free of pests like rats and snakes. This was particularly important for farmers, who produced a lot of grain. The rats didn't eat the grain because the cats ate the rats!

Tutankhamun's Mask

One of the most beautiful artifacts from Ancient Egypt is Tutankhamun's mask, which was found in his tomb. The mask is gold, with blue lines between gold lines. Under his chin is a thin beard. There is also a snake on the top of his head.

Iron in Ancient Egypt

The Ancient Egyptians used iron 5,000 years ago. Some of their early iron was from meteorites. They also mined it from the ground. They thought iron was special because they believed it came from the sky. They called it "the metal of heaven". They used it for making jewelery, agricultural tools and weapons.

Review on Unit (7)

Vocabulary

artifacts	قطع أثرية / مصنوعات يدوية	trade	تجارة / يتاجر
preserve	يحفظ	metal	معدن
durable	متين	weapon	سلاح
fascinating	رائع / جذاب / مذهل	economy	اقتصاد
granite	جرانيت	trip over	يطأ على / يدوس على
glass	زجاج	hug	يحتضن
clay	صلصال / فخار	tears	دموع
gold	ذهب	stone	حجر
baboon	قرد البابون	iron	حديد
monkey	قرد	meteorite	حجر نيزكي
rat	فأر	dagger	خنجر
crocodile	تمساح	precious	ثمين
hippo	فرس النهر	mine	منجم / يستخرج معادن
falcon	صقر	copper	نحاس
ibis	طائر أبو منجل	bronze	برونز
snake	ثعبان	craftsmen	حرفيين
grain	حبوب	mummify	يحنط
adore	يُحب بشدة / يعشق	statue	تمثال
wisdom	حكمة	melt	يذوب / ينصهر

Pronunciation

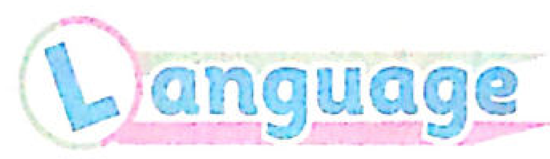
bear	دُب	share	يُشارك	pair	زوج من
pear	كمثرى	rare	نادر	hair	شعر
tear	يمزق	there	هناك	air	هواء
wear	يرتدي				

Prepositions of place

in	في	under	تحت	between	بين
on	على	behind	خلف	next to	بجوار
in front of	أمام				

Help your child revise unit (7).

ساعد طفلك أن يراجع الوحدة السابعة.



The Past Simple Tense

زمن الماضي البسيط

Form التكوين

The second form of the verb.

يتكون الماضي البسيط من التصريف الثاني للفعل. (بإضافة d, ed, ied للفعل المنتظم والفعل غير المنتظم يحفظ).

e.g. He dropped the glass. - She became a teacher.

Negative النفي

Subject (الفاعل) + didn't + inf. (مصدر الفعل)

e.g. Rats didn't eat the grain. - I didn't grow up in Cairo.

Question السؤال

(Yes / No) question: **Did + subject (الفاعل) + inf. (مصدر الفعل) ?**

e.g. Did the Ancient Egyptians only keep cats as pets?

- Yes, they did. - No, they didn't.

Wh-question: **Q.W + did + subject (الفاعل) + inf. (مصدر الفعل) ?**

e.g. What did they feed their cats?

Verb to be in the past

Form التكوين

Subject + (was / were) + باقي الجملة

e.g. There was a cat here.

Negative النفي

Subject + (wasn't / weren't) + باقي الجملة

e.g. There weren't popular pets.

Question السؤال

(Was / Were) + subject + باقي الجملة ?

e.g. Were there a lot of mummies?

- Yes, there were. - No, there weren't.

Wh-question:

Q.W + (was / were) + subject + باقي الجملة ?

e.g. Which was their favorite animal?

Dictation on Unit (7)

Lesson (1)

قطع أثرية	....
يحفظ	....
متين	...ال / فخار ....
مذهل / خلاب	

Lesson (2)

قرد	...النهر ....
قرد البابون	....
فأر	...أبو منجل ....
تمساح	....
حبوب	....
يُحب بشدة / يعشق	....
حكمة	....

Lesson (3)

تجارة	...على / يدوس على ....
معدن	....
سلاح	....
اقتصاد	....

Lessons (4 & 5)

حديد	....
حجر نيزكي	....
خنجر	....
حرفيين	....
أكثر ندرة	....

Help your child dictate these words.

ساعد طفلك في إملاء هذه الكلمات.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The Ancient Egyptians .... with other countries.
   a) played b) fought c) traded d) acted
2. They first found metal in ....
   a) clubs b) rocks c) temples d) pyramids
3. They could melt metal into different ....
   a) artifacts b) fruits c) sports d) shapes
4. They used metal to make tools and ....
   a) weapons b) coins c) rocks d) money

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Hot and dry climate helps to .... artifacts.
   a) damage b) preserve c) welcome d) cover
2. Falcons and the ibis represented .... in Ancient Egypt.
   a) wisdom b) statues c) grain d) rocks
3. Trade with other countries helped the Ancient Egyptian ....
   a) science b) history c) economy d) art
4. Mothers always .... their children when they go to school.
   a) hate b) dislike c) hug d) trip

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

weapons - metals - Copper - trade - countries

The Ancient Egyptians used iron for small items, like jewelry. 1)............ and bronze were common 2)............................... for tools because they were easier to find. But later on, iron agricultural tools and 3)............................... began to appear. This was the result of the Ancient Egyptians getting more iron through 4)............................... with other countries.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

One night, King Midas was walking in his garden when he tripped over something on the ground. It was a strange-looking goat. It looked very sick. King Midas was a kind man, so he took the goat into his castle. There, he gave it food and a warm bed. In the morning, the goat felt much better. "I would like to thank you, King Midas," said the goat. "What would you like more than anything else in the world?" King Midas thought for a minute, then said, "I would like everything I touch to turn into gold." "OK," said the goat, and made the king's wish come true.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. King Midas went to his garden ....
   a) **on foot** b) **on a horse** c) **on a donkey** d) **on a goat**
2. The goat looked very ....
   a) **well** b) **good** c) **excited** d) **sick**
3. King Midas would like everything he touches to turn into ....
   a) **silver** b) **gold** c) **copper** d) **bronze**

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What did the king give to the goat? ....
5. What was the king like? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. his - on - **The king's** - precious - fell - roses - tears - .
....
2. found - **The Ancient** - metals - Egyptians - the - in - rocks - .
....
3. want - you - **What** - to - do - wear - today - ?
....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between bracket

1. Rats didn't .... (eats) the grai
2. .... (Do) the Ancient Egyptians keep cats as pet

7 Punctuate the following.

- the ibis represented wisdom ....

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about "Iron in Ancient Egypt":

Guiding elements:

- **When did the Ancient Egyptians use it?**
- **Where did they find it?**
- **What did they use it for?**

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Al-Azhar Corner

1 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

boat - do - Park - did - go

Mayar : Hi Nesma! Did you have a nice weekend?
Nesma : Hi Mayar! Yes, I 1) ....
Mayar : Where did you 2) .... ?
Nesma : I went to Al-Azhar 3) ....
Mayar : What did you 4) .... there?
Nesma : I had a picnic, then I went on a 5) .... trip.

Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

sky - mined - find - ago - special

Omar : When did the Ancient Egyptians start using iron?
Ali : They started using it 5,000 years 1) ....
Omar : Where did they 2) .... it?
Ali : They 3) .... it from the ground.
Omar : Why did they think iron was 4) .... ?
Ali : Because they believed it came from the 5) ....

2 Read and circle the odd one out and replace it.

1.	baboon	hippo	crocodile	ibis	(........................)
2.	rat	granite	glass	clay	(........................)
3.	play	visit	save	saw	(........................)
4.	on	in	is	under	(........................)
5.	went	ate	work	found	(........................)

Read and circle the odd one out and replace it.

1.	do	pear	wear	tear	(........................)
2.	gold	bronze	copper	school	(........................)
3.	in front of	next to	box	behind	(........................)
4.	yesterday	last	in the past	tomorrow	(........................)
5.	Where	White	When	What	(........................)

Unit 8

Toys and games

In this unit, the students will ...

- listen, read, discuss, and write about games, toys, and activities.
- listen to and read a dialog about old toys and games.
- use verb intensifiers.
- listen to and understand a story about a toy.
- use verbs that are followed by -ing.
- spell and say words containing gh or ght.
- use pie charts and bar graphs.
- write a description of your favorite game.
- design and make a simple board game.

Lesson (1) A BOX OF TOYS

Key vocabulary

كلمات أساسية


doll's house
بيت الدمية


rollerblades
حذاء التزلج (زلاجات)


action figure
شخصية حركية


marbles
البلي


board game
لعبة لوحية


cuddly toy
لعبة محشوة


train set
لعبة القطار


skateboard
لوح التزلج

Extra vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

favorite	مفضل	actually	في الحقيقة - بالفعل	younger	أصغر سنا
toys	ألعاب	too	أيضا	fast	سريع - بسرعة
both	كلا من	again	مرة أخرى	cool	رائع
brilliant	رائع	a while	فترة - وقت قليل	older	أكبر سنا
box	صندوق	though	مع ذلك - رغم ذلك	later	لاحقًا

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past	P.P
visit	يزور	visited	visited
love	يحب	loved	loved
find	يجد	found	found
make up	يخترع	made up	made up
beat	يهزم	beat	beaten
know	يعرف	knew	known

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Important expressions and prepositions
وحروف جر هامة

on the weekend	في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع	after a while	فترة من الوقت
love + (v -ing)	يحب	too (+ adj)	
look for	يبحث عن	I'd love to + inf.	...
go fast	يسير بسرعة	very often	
So did I!	وأنا كذلك!	lots of	من

Definitions

beat	be more successful than someone in a game
have a go	try something
made up	thought of or invented

Listen and read.
استمع واقرأ.

Fares : Did you visit your grandma on the weekend, Yaseen?

زرت جدتك في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع يا ياسين؟

Yaseen : Yes, I did. I found a box of my old toys at her house, actually.

فعلت. لقد وجدت صندوق ألعابي القديمة في منزلها، بالفعل.

Adam : What did you find in there?

وجدت فيه؟

Yaseen : There was an **action figure**. I loved playing with it!

هناك شخصية حركية. كنت أحب اللعب بها!

Fares : I loved playing with my old action figures, too! I **made up** lots of games for them.

أحب اللعب بشخصياتي الحركية القديمة أيضًا! لقد اخترعت الكثير من الألعاب لهم.

Adam : When I was younger, my favorite toy was a **train set**.

كنت أصغر سناً، كانت لعبتي المفضلة هي لعبة القطار.

Help your child listen and read.

طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

Lesson (1)

Yaseen : I didn't have a train set, but my sister had a big **doll's house**. We both played with it. I don't know where it is now. I found my old **rollerblades**, though.

لم يكن لدي لعبة قطار، لكن أختي كان لديها بيت دمية كبير. كنا نلعب به. لا أعرف أين هو الآن. لقد وجدت زلاجاتي القديمة، بالرغم من ذلك.

Adam : Brilliant! Did you **have a go** on them? رائع! هل جربتهم؟

Yaseen : No, I wanted to, but they were too small. لا، أردت ذلك، لكنها كانت صغيره جدًا.

Fares : I didn't have rollerblades, but I had a **skateboard**. I could go really fast after a while!

لم يكن لدي حذاء تزلج، لكن كان لدي لوح تزلج. كنت أستطيع أن أسير بسرعة كبيرة بعد فترة من الوقت!

Yaseen : Cool! Did you play **board games** when you were younger?

رائع! هل كنت تلعب ألعاب لوحية عندما كنت أصغر سنأ؟

Fares : Yes, we played board games. I played with my older brother, but he usually beat me!

نعم، لقد لعبنا ألعاب لوحية. كنت ألعب مع أخي الاكبر، لكنه عادة ما كان يهزمني!

Adam : We didn't play board games very often, but we played **marbles**.

لم نكن نلعب ألعاب لوحية كثيرًا، لكننا لعبنا البلي.

Fares : So did I! I think I'll look for some of my old toys later. I'd love to see my favorite **cuddly toy** again.

وأنا كذلك! أعتقد أنني سأبحث عن بعض ألعابي القديمة لاحقًا. أحب أن أرى لعبتي المحشوة المفضلة مرة أخرى.

Ask and answer. اسأل وأجب.



When you were younger, what was your favorite toy?
عندما كنت أصغر سنًا، ماذا كانت لعبتك المفضلة؟

My favorite toy was a skateboard.
كانت لعبتي المفضلة لوح التزلج.



General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Fares and Yaseen are ....
   a) friends b) brothers c) cousins d) uncles
2. They visited grandma ....
   a) yesterday b) on the weekend c) tomorrow d) last week
3. Fares loved playing with a/an ....
   a) train set b) action figure c) skateboard d) doll's house
4. Yaseen's .... had a doll's house.
   a) brother b) sister c) cousin d) mum

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I visited my uncle .... the weekend.
   a) in b) on c) at d) by
2. I have an action .... I love playing with it.
   a) game b) finger c) figure d) doll
3. I could go really fast on my ....
   a) marbles b) skateboard c) doll d) train
4. Did you have a .... on your rollerblades?
   a) go b) play c) went d) ride
5. I loved .... with my action figures.
   a) play b) played c) playing d) plays
6. I could go really fast on my skateboard after a ....
   a) while b) when c) what d) time

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

playing - figures - make - box - play

I have a box of toys. I love 1) .... with my toys. I have some action 2) .... I 3) .... up lots of games for them. I always 4) .... with my brother. We have a great time together.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



Read the text and answer the questions.

I'm Sarah. I'm twelve years old. I visited my grandma on the weekend. I found a box of my old toys at her house. I found an action figure. I loved playing with it. I found my old rollerblades, too. They were too small. I was very happy to have a go on them again.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Sarah is .... years old.
   a) 11 b) 10 c) 12 d) 13
2. Sarah visited her grandma on ....
   a) Monday b) Tuesday c) Wednesday d) the weekend
3. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to the ....
   a) train set b) action figure c) marbles d) box

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What did Sarah find at her grandma's house? ....
5. Why was Sarah very happy? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

1. was - I - had - When - younger, - I - set - a train - .

....

2. you - a go - Did - on - have - rollerbaldes - ?

....

3. love to - my favorite - see - I'd - toy - cuddly - .

....

6 Punctuate the following.

- what did you find in your box ....



Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

My box of toys when I was younger

Guiding elements: - What did you find in it? - What is your favorite toy?

Lesson (2) I WAS VERY GOOD AT HIDE AND SEEK

Key vocabulary كلمات أساسية


skipping
نط الحبل


hide and seek
لعبة الاستغماية - الغميضة


hopscotch
لعبة المربعات (الحجلة)

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

helmet	خوذة	knee pads	وسادات الركبة	interesting	شيق
project	مشروع	colored chalk	طباشير ملون	little	صغير السن
climbing	التسلق	imagination	خيال	running	الجري
stickers	ملصقات	fun	متعة	best places	أفضل الأماكن
together	معًا - سويًا	difficult	صعب	outside	بالخارج

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past	P.P	Present		Past	P.P
practice	يتدرب	practiced	practiced	hurt	يؤلم / يؤذي	hurt	hurt
like	يحب	liked	liked	hide	يختبئ	hid	hidden
prefer	يفضل	preferred	preferred	draw	يرسم	drew	drawn
start	يبدأ	started	started	think	يعتقد / يفكر	thought	thought
get	يحصل على	got	got	ride	يركب	rode	ridden
fall off	يقع	fell off	fallen off	wear	يرتدي	wore	worn

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

good at + (v + ing /noun)	جيد في	prefer	+ v - ing	يفضل
at all	إطلاقًا	like		يحب
make up stories	يؤلف قصص	enjoy		يستمتع ب
for a long time	لفترة طويلة	quite		إلى حد ما
play with	يلعب مع	look like		يشبه

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Lesson (2)

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

Sarah : Hi Rania, have you started the project about toys and games yet?

مرحبًا رانيا، هل بدأتِ مشروع لعب الأطفال والألعاب بعد؟

Rania : Hi Sarah. Yes, I started it on the weekend. It's really interesting!

مرحبًا سارة. نعم، لقد بدأته في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع. إنه مثير للاهتمام حقًا!

Sarah : Yes, it is. What games did you like playing when you were younger?

نعم إنه كذلك. ما هي الألعاب التي كنت تحبين لعبها عندما كنتِ أصغر سنًا؟

Rania : I thought **hide and seek** was fun. I was very good at hiding!

اعتقدت أن الغميضة كانت ممتعة. لقد كنت جيدة جدًا في الاختباء!

Sarah : I was good at it, too! I could hide for a very long time. I also really liked playing **hopscotch** with my friends. We used different colored chalk to draw the squares.

لقد كنت جيدة في ذلك أيضًا! كنت أستطيع الاختباء لفترة طويلة جدًا. أنا أيضًا أحببت حقًا لعب الحجلة مع أصدقائي.

استخدمنا طباشيرًا بألوان مختلفة لرسم المربعات.

Rania : I thought hopscotch was quite good, but I preferred **skipping**.

كنت أظن أن الحجلة جيدة جدًا، لكنني كنت أفضل نط الحبل.

Sarah : I liked skipping, but I wasn't very good at it. Some skipping games are so difficult!

كنت أحب نط الحبل، لكنني لم أكن جيدة في ذلك. بعض ألعاب نط الحبل صعبة للغاية!

Rania : Yes, they are. I had to practice a lot with my sister!

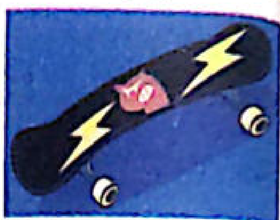
نعم إنها كذلك. كان علي أن أتدرب كثيرًا مع أختي!

Sarah : Ah, my brother didn't practice with me. He didn't like skipping at all! We often played marbles together, though.

آه، أخي لم يتدرب معي. لم يكن يحب نط الحبل على الإطلاق! رغم ذلك، كنا نلعب البلي معًا في كثير من الأحيان.

- Read again. Write T (True) or F (False).

1. Sarah wasn't good at hide and seek. ( )
2. Rania thinks skipping is better than hopscotch. ( )
3. Rania and her sister practiced skipping together. ( )
4. Sarah played marbles with her sister. ( )



Look and read the description.

My Favorite Toy *by Youssef*

When I was younger, my favorite toy was my skateboard. I loved going to the park and playing with my friends. They had skateboards, too, and it was **really** good fun. We all wanted to go **so** fast! My skateboard was black, with orange and yellow stickers on it. I had to wear a helmet and knee pads. It **really** hurts if you fall off a skateboard! I got my first skateboard when I was eight, and it was **quite** small. I don't use it at all now, because I have a bigger one.

عندما كنت أصغر سناً، كانت لعبتي المفضلة هي لوح التزلج. كنت أحب الذهاب إلى الحديقة واللعب مع أصدقائي. كان لديهم ألواح تزلج أيضًا، وكان الأمر ممتعا حقًا. أردنا جميعا أن نسير بسرعه جدًا! كان لوح التزلج الخاص بي أسود اللون وعليه ملصقات برتقالية وصفراء. اضطررت إلى ارتداء خوذة ووسادات للركبة. إنه أمر مؤلم حقًا إذا سقطت من على لوح التزلج! حصلت على أول لوح تزلج عندما كنت في الثامنة من عمري، وكان صغيرًا إلى حد ما. أنا لا أستخدمه على الإطلاق الآن، لأن لدي واحد أكبر.

Look and read.



When Amina was little, she really liked games that used a lot of imagination. She was very good at making up stories. She had a doll's house, some cuddly toys, and some action figures.

عندما كانت أمينة صغيرة، كانت تحب جدًا الألعاب التي تستخدم الكثير من الخيال. كانت جيدة جدًا في تأليف القصص. كان لديها بيت دمية، وبعض الألعاب المحشوة، وبعض الشخصيات الحركية.



Nour really enjoyed playing outside when she was younger. She liked running, climbing, and playing tennis. She was quite good at football, too.

كانت نور تستمتع حقًا باللعب في الخارج عندما كانت أصغر سنًا. كانت تحب الجري والتسلق ولعب التنس. لقد كانت جيدة جدًا في كرة القدم أيضًا.

Look, ask and answer.





What did you enjoy playing when you were younger?

ما الذي كنت تستمتع بلعبه عندما كنت أصغر سنًا؟

I really enjoyed riding my bike.

كنت أستمتع جدًا بركوب دراجتي.



Help your child look and read.

ساعد طفلك أن ينظر ويقرأ.



Intensifiers

المقويات - المعززات

- We use **intensifiers** to give a stronger meaning to **adjectives** and **verbs**.

نستخدم المقويات لإعطاء معنى أقوى للصفات والأفعال.

① لتقوية الصفة نستخدم (very , really و so) قبل الصفة.

e.g. I was **really / very** good at hiding.
Some skipping games are **so** difficult.

② لتقوية الفعل نستخدم (really) قبل الفعل.

e.g. I **really** liked playing hopscotch.

③ نستخدم (at all) مع الجمل المنفية وتأتي في نهاية الجملة.

e.g. He **didn't** like skipping **at all**!

④ نستخدم (quite) لجعل الصفة أقل قوة.

e.g. She was **quite** good at football.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I .... liked playing with cuddly toys when I was younger.
   a) really b) very c) so d) at all
2. My brother was .... good at football. He always beat me!
   a) much b) more c) very d) at all
3. I .... enjoyed playing marbles with my friends.
   a) very b) so c) really d) quite
4. I don't like skateboarding ....
   a) really b) at all c) very d) so

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. He is .... (at all) good at tennis.
2. I think hopscotch is .... (so) good, but I prefer hide and seek.
3. I don't like playing football .... (really).
4. Nadia has .... (at all) pretty marbles.
5. I .... (very) enjoyed playing board games.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Amina really liked ....

   a) games b) drawing c) playing d) painting

2. Amina used a lot of ....

   a) money b) imagination c) stories d) toys

3. She was very good at .... up stories.

   a) taking b) making c) playing d) reading

4. Amina had a .... house.

   a) dog's b) toy's c) doll's d) cat's

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I like playing .... I'm very good at hiding.

   a) football b) hide and seek c) skipping d) tennis

2. We use colored .... to draw squares to play hopscotch.

   a) pencils b) pens c) chalk d) stone

3. I always wear a .... when I play with my skateboard.

   a) hat b) cap c) helmet d) jacket

4. My sister liked .... and climbing.

   a) running b) run c) runs d) ran

5. What were you good .... ?

   a) in b) at c) on d) for

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

playing - outside - bigger - younger - quite

I'm Nour. I really enjoyed playing 1) .... when I was 2) ....
I liked running, climbing and 3) .... tennis. I was 4) ....
good at football, too.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (2)



4 Read the text and answer the questions.

When I was younger, my favorite toy was my skateboard. I loved going to the park and playing with my friends. They had skateboards, too, and it was really good fun. We all wanted to go so fast! My skateboard was black, with orange and yellow stickers on it. I had to wear a helmet and knee pads. It really hurts if you fall off a skateboard! I got my first skateboard when I was eight, and it was quite small. I don't use it at all now, because I have a bigger one.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The text is about my favorite ....
   a) story   b) toy   c) book   d) sport
2. I played it at the ....
   a) school   b) club   c) park   d) street
3. My first skateboard was .... small.
   a) very   b) really   c) quite   d) so

Answer the following questions.

4. Who did you play with? ....
5. What happens if you fall off a skateboard? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

1. quite - Skateboarding - good - is - .

....

2. didn't - train sets - Asser - at - like - all - .

....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. Sarah ....(very) enjoys playing marbles.
2. I don't like playing tennis ....(quite) .
3. I think hopscotch is ....(at all) good, but I prefer hide and seek.
4. I ....(so) like running.

7 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

Your favorite toy

Guiding elements:

(skateboard - park)

Lesson (3) WE LOVED PLAYING WITH OUR TRAIN SET

Vocabulary

parents	الوالدان	boat	قارب
market	سوق	amazing	
plane	طائرة	posters	
store	متجر - محل	machine	
stall	كشك - دكان صغير	cloth	

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
shop	يتسوق	shopped	shopped
move	يتحرك	moved	moved
imagine	يتخيل	imagined	imagined
continue	يستمر	continued	continued
share	يشارك	shared	shared
paint	يدهن - يلون	painted	painted
tidy up	يرتب	tidied up	tidied up
hate	يكره	hated	hated
finish	ينهي	finished	finished

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
buy	يشتري	bought	bought
show	يبين / يظهر / يوضح	showed	shown
fly	يطير	flew	flown
break	يكسر	broke	broken
say	يقول	said	said

Help your child identify these words.

ـ أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Lesson (3)

Definitions

تعريفات

stall	a large table that you use to sell things from at a market	كشك - دكانة صغيرة
button	what you touch to make a machine work	زر
trunk	the long nose of an elephant	(خرطوم / زلومة) الفيل
sail	strong pieces of cloth that make a boat move	شراع

Look and read.

انظر واقرأ.



Ali was shopping with his parents at the market . He saw a stall that sold toys. A man showed him how a train moved. Ali thought the toys were amazing. Ali's dad came to see the toys, too. He liked the train, so he bought it. He said Ali could play with it.

كان علي يتسوق مع والديه في السوق. رأى كشكًا يبيع الألعاب. بين له رجل كيف يتحرك القطار. اعتقد علي أن الألعاب كانت مذهلة. جاء والد علي ليرى الألعاب أيضًا. لقد أحب القطار فاشتراه. قال إن علي يمكنه اللعب به.



Read again and answer.

1. What was Ali doing?

....

2. Did Ali like the toys?

....

3. Who bought the toy?

....



verb + (verb + ing)

Some verbs are followed by verb + ing: الأفعال يتبعها (فعل + ing):

like	يحب	continue	يستمر في	love
finish	ينهي	enjoy	يستمتع بـ	imagine
hate	يكره	stop	يتوقف عن	prefer

e.g. I **enjoy looking** at the market stalls.

I **stopped playing** with my train set a few years ago.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Ali loves .... foot
   a) play b) plays c) playing d) played
2. Do you enjoy .... in the s
   a) swim b) swimming c) swims d) swam
3. Last night I finished .... my homework at 8 p
   a) to do b) did c) does d) doing
4. Amal imagined .... in a pla
   a) to fly b) flew c) flying d) fly

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brack

1. Ghada prefers ....(play) board gam
2. My sister stopped ....(let) me share her doll's house because I brok
3. They finished ....(paint) the posters and tidied
4. Does he enjoy ....(read) adventure boo
5. Ali likes ....(shop) at the mar
6. On weekends I hate ....(get) up ea
7. I think people should stop ....(throw) rubbish in the str
8. You should continue .... (

Help your child use verbs followed by v+ing.

طفلك أن يستخدم الأفعال المتبوعة بأفعال + ing.



PRONUNCIATION

"gh"

"gh" sounds like /f/ — تنطق "gh" مثل صوت /f/.

draughts	لعبة الداما	laughter	الضحك	tough	متين - قاسٍ
cough	كحة	laugh	يضحك	enough	كافٍ

"gh" is silent in most words. — تكون "gh" صامتة "لا تنطق" في معظم الكلمات.

bought	اشترى	drought	جفاف	high	مرتفع - عالٍ
thought	اعتقد / فكرَ	eight	رقم ثمانية	daughter	ابنة
night	ليلة	brought	أحضر		

Then listen again and repeat.



This game is called draughts.

We laugh when we play draughts.

Wael bought some marbles yesterday.





She thought about the toy that she bought.

A drought is when there isn't enough rain.



Do these words have the sound /f/? Circle Y (Yes) or N (No).

1. laughed Y / N
2. bought Y / N
3. drought Y / N
4. daughter Y / N
5. thought Y / N
6. coughed Y / N
7. enough Y / N
8. brought Y / N

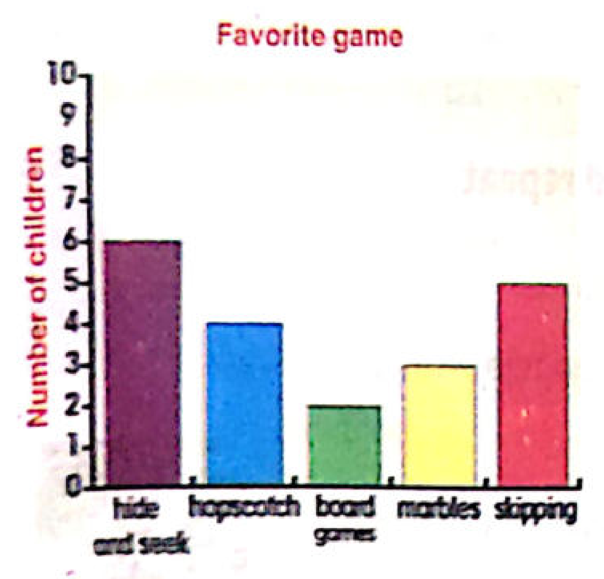


Using Graphs

استخدام الرسم البياني (المخطط)



This bar graph shows the favorite game in our class.



1. How many children like skipping?

....

2. Which game has the most studen

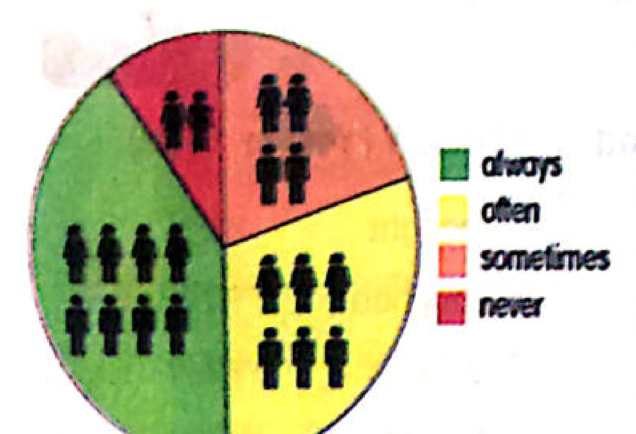
....

3. Which game is liked the least?

....



This pie chart shows how often children in our class play computer games on the weekend.



1. Which group is the biggest?

....

2. Which group is the smallest?

....

3. What's the total of numbers?

....

Help your child identify and use graphs.

طفلك أن يتعرف على المخططات البيانية ويستخدمها.

Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Ali was .... with his parents at the market.
   a) playing b) shopping c) writing d) running
2. He saw a .... that sold toys.
   a) stall b) supermarket c) mall d) store
3. A .... showed him how a train moved.
   a) girl b) boy c) woman d) man
4. Ali thought the toys were ....
   a) boring b) amazed c) amazing d) small

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. A .... is the long nose of an elephant.
   a) leg b) trunk c) sail d) stall
2. We go shopping at the ....
   a) school b) club c) market d) park
3. My sister likes toys. They're ....
   a) amazing b) amazed c) bad d) interested
4. To make a toy move, you press this ....
   a) bottle b) button c) butter d) wheel
5. A .... is a strong piece of cloth that makes a boat move.
   a) sale b) sell c) sail d) soil
6. A .... is when there isn't enough rain.
   a) drought b) draught c) laughter d) laugh

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

button - set - school - market - stall

Yesterday I went shopping with my mom. We went to the 1) .... There were a lot of toys at a 2) .... I liked a train 3) .... It has 4) .... to make it move. My mom liked it, so we bought it.



4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Ali is a student. He is in grade six. He went shopping with his pare at the market yesterday. He saw a stall that sold toys. A man showed how a train moved. He thought the toys were amazing. Ali's dad came see the toys, too. He liked the train, so he bought it. He said Ali could p with it.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Ali is in grade ....
   a) 3 b) 4 c) 5 d) 6
2. The word "amazing" is similar to ....
   a) terrible b) fantastic c) good d) interested
3. The underlined pronoun "He" refers to ....
   a) Ali b) Ali's mom c) Ali's dad d) the seller

B) Answer the following questions.

4. When did Ali go shopping? ....
5. Where did he buy the toy from? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences

1. laugh - play - We - draughts - when - we - .

....

2. imagined - in - Aya - flying - plane - a - .

....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between bracke

1. I didn't finish ....(do) my homew
2. You should stop ....(eat) too many swe
3. I hate ....(watch)
4. My sister, Sarah, loves ....(paint) flow
5. I can't imagine ....(live) on the mo
6. People should continue ....(lear

Help your child deal with such questions.

طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lessons (4 & 5)

WRITING: A DESCRIPTION OF MY FAVORITE GAME

Vocabulary

الكلمات

description	وصف	bricks	طوب
video games	ألعاب الفيديو	creative	مبدع - إبداعي
outside	بالخارج	adventure	مغامرة
dice	حجر النرد (الزهر)	kind = type = sort	نوع
different	مختلف	important	هام
although - though	بالرغم من - ومع ذلك	images = graphics	صور - رسومات
games console	وحدة تحكم ألعاب	modern	حديث - معاصر

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past	P.P
solve	يحل	solved	solved
call	يُسمى / يُنادى / يتصل	called	called
design	يصمم	designed	designed
find	يجد	found	found
build	يبني	built	built

Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

solve a problem	يحل مشكلة	an hour a day	ساعة في اليوم
about an hour	حوالي ساعة	too much	كثيرًا جدًا
build cities	يبني مدنًا	share with	يتشارك مع
once a week	مرة في الأسبوع		

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.



My favorite video game

by Belal

I love playing all kinds of games. I play games outside with my friends, and at school we play hopscotch and board games. I also enjoy playing board games with my sister, although she often beats me!

ب لعب جميع أنواع الألعاب. ألعب الألعاب في الخارج مع أصدقائي، وفي المدرسة نلعب الحجلة والألعاب اللوحية. أنا أستمتع أيضًا ب الألعاب اللوحية مع أختي، على الرغم من أنها غالبًا ما تهزمني!

My favorite games are video games. I don't play them very ofte though. I play for about an hour on the weekend. It's fun! My favori games are ones where you build cities. I've made a really big city usin different bricks. It has animals and plants in it, too. I **like** these game **because** you can be creative and make something new.

ابي المفضلة هي ألعاب الفيديو. ومع ذلك أنا لا ألعبهم كثيرًا. ألعب لمدة ساعة تقريبًا في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع. إنه أمر ممتع! ألعابي ـفضلة هي تلك التي تقوم فيها ببناء المدن. لقد صنعت مدينة كبيرة جدًا باستخدام طوب مختلف. وفيها حيوانات ونباتات أيضًا. أحب ه الألعاب لأنه يمكنك أن تكون مبدعًا وتصنع شيئًا جديدًا.

Some of the images in modern video games are amazing. I've g a new **games console**, which I share with my sister. She enjoys playin adventure games, where you can go to different places to find somethin important or solve a problem. They can be difficult, but I **think** they can b fun, too, **because** they're so exciting.

ض الصور في ألعاب الفيديو الحديثة مذهلة. لقد حصلت على وحدة تحكم ألعاب جديدة، وأتشاركها مع أختي. إنها تستمتع بلعب ـاب المغامرة، حيث يمكنك الذهاب إلى أماكن مختلفة للعثور على شيء مهم أو حل مشكلة. يمكن أن تكون صعبة ولكن أعتقد أنها كن أن تكون ممتعة أيضًا، لأنها مثيرة للغاية.

Video games can be a problem when you play them too muc However, I think they can be great when you do something that is ve creative or exciting. You can often play with your friends, too.

كن أن تشكل ألعاب الفيديو مشكلة عندما تلعبها كثيرًا. ومع ذلك، أعتقد أنها يمكن أن تكون رائعة عندما تفعل شيئًا إبداعيًا أو مثيرًا الية. يمكنك غالبًا اللعب مع أصدقائك أيضًا.



Read the description again and circle the correct answer.

1. Belal plays **(board games / hopscotch)** with his sister.
2. Belal's favorite video games are ones where you build **(plants / cities)**.
3. Some of the **(consoles / graphics)** in modern video games are amazin



Help your child read about a description of a game.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ عن وصف لعبة.



Opinion & Reason

الرأي والسبب

- عند التعبير عن الرأي نستخدم أفعال مثل: (like - think)
- عند التعبير عن السبب نستخدم (because)

e.g. I **like** these games **because** you can be creative and make something new.

I **think** they can be fun, too, **because** they're so exciting.

How to write a description of a game

- عند كتابة وصف للعبة، قم بكتابة بعض الملاحظات والأفكار.
- استخدم كلمات تعبر عن الرأي والسبب الذي جعلك تحبها.

My favorite game

Use these notes:

What is it called?	Chess
How do you play it?	Move the pieces on the squares
How often do you play it?	Twice a week
Who do you play with?	My brother
Why do you like it?	It makes me think and be smart.

I love playing all kinds of games. My favorite game is chess. It's a board game with white and black squares. I play it with my brother. We play it twice a week after school. A player can only move one piece at a time to the square of the other player. I like this game because it makes me think and be smart. I think it is a fun game because it's exciting.

Help your child write about his favorite game.

ساعد طفلك أن يكتب عن لعبته المفضلة.

General Activities

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. My favorite games are ....
   a) hopscotch b) computer games c) draughts d) video g
2. I play for about .... on the wee
   a) a while b) all day c) an hour d) 30 min
3. My favorite games are ones where you ....
   a) plant b) do c) make d) build
4. It has .... and plants in
   a) animals b) people c) birds d) fish

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Some of the .... in modern video games are am
   a) consoles b) images c) boards d) wires
2. I enjoy playing games where I find something ....
   a) important b) boring c) tiring d) ugly
3. Video games are .... when they are cre
   a) dirty b) bad c) great d) damage
4. I have got a new games .... ; which I share with my
   a) console b) box c) image d) draught

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

playing - hide - ride - outside - fun

I like playing games. I always play 1) .... with my friends. love playing 2) .... and seek. We also enjoy 3) .... b games. I think they can be 4) .... because they're so exciting.

Help your child deal with such questions.

لك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Some of the images in modern video games are amazing. I've got a new games console, which I share with my sister. She enjoys playing adventure games, where you can go to different places to find something important or solve a problem. They can be difficult but I think they can be fun, too, because they're so exciting. Video games can be a problem when you play them too much. However, I think they can be great when you do something that is very creative or exciting. You can often play with your friends, too.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The word "images" is similar in meaning to ....
   a) **graphics** b) **games** c) **graphs** d) **sports**
2. Video games can be fun because they're so ....
   a) **boring** b) **excited** c) **amazed** d) **exciting**
3. You can often play with your ....
   a) **parents** b) **grandparents** c) **friends** d) **cousins**

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What kind of games does your sister like? ....
5. How can video games be a problem? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

1. love - all - I - playing - games - kinds of - .

....

2. your - game - What - favorite - is - ?

....

6 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

Your favorite video game

Guiding elements:

- **What's it called?**
- **How do you play it?**
- **Why do you like it?**

Writing Corner

My favorite toy

When I was younger, my favorite toy was my skateboard. I loved going to the park and playing with my friends. My skateboard was blue w yellow stickers on it. I had to wear a helmet and knee pads. I got my fi skateboard when I was ten on my birthday. I loved it very much.

The games I enjoyed

When I was little, I really liked games and playing outside. I enjoy riding my bike, running and playing tennis. I was very good at making stories. I had some cuddly toys and some action figures. I was quite go at football. I also really liked playing hopscotch with my friends.

Going shopping

Yesterday I went shopping with my parents at the market. I saw a stall that sold toys. A man showed me how a train set moved. I thoug the toys were amazing. My mom liked the train set, so she bought it for m I was very happy because I like playing with my toys.

Playing

Playing is good for us in many different ways. When we play, we fe happy. We also learn about the world and ourselves. When we play, learn to solve problems and make friends. From early times people play different games. In Ancient Egypt people played a game called senet. like chess. People often play to relax themselves and enjoy their time.

Review on Unit (8)

Vocabulary

marbles	البلي	doll's house	بيت الدمية	skateboard	لوح التزلج
cuddly toy	لعبة محشوة	rollerblades	حذاء التزلج (زلاجات)	bricks	طوب
skipping	نط الحبل	images = graphics	صور - رسومات	modern	حديث
train set	لعبة القطار	games console	وحدة ألعاب	adventure	مغامرة
market	سوق	although - though	بالرغم من - ومع ذلك	creative	مبدع
posters	ملصقات	hide and seek	الاستغماية	stall	كشك
description	وصف	video games	ألعاب الفيديو	parents	الوالدان
outside	بالخارج	action figure	شخصية حركية	board game	لعبة لوحية
machine	آلة	hopscotch	لعبة المربعات (الحجلة)	amazing	مذهل

Pronunciation

"gh" sounds like **/f/** تنطق "gh" مثل صوت /f/.

draughts	لعبة الداما	laughter	الضحك	tough	متين - قاسٍ
cough	كحة / يكح	laugh	يضحك	enough	كافٍ

"gh" is silent in most words. تكون "gh" صامته "لا تنطق" في معظم الكلمات.

bought	اشترى	drought	جفاف	high	مرتفع - عالٍ
thought	أعتقد / فكّر	eight	رقم ثمانية	daughter	ابنة
night	ليلة	brought	أحضر		

Language

1) Intensifiers:(really / very / so + adj.) (really + verb) (Negative نفي + at all)

e.g. I was **really / very** good at hiding.
I didn't like skipping **at all**.

2) Verbs followed by (verb + -ing):
(continue - finish - hate - imagine - like - prefer - stop)

e.g. I enjoy **playing** football.
I prefer **making** up stories.

Dictation on Unit (8)

Lesson (1)

نصية حركية	....	ألعاب أطفال	....
رب	....	لعبة لوحية	....
ة	....	لعبة القطار	....
ران	....	يبحث عن	....
ة محشوة	....	كثير من	....
نرع	....	منزل الدُمى	....
ج التزلج	....	حذاء التزلج (زلاجات)	....

Lesson (2)

بعات	....	لعبة الاستغماية	....
ضل	....	الحجلة	....
يل	....	نط الحبل	....
لف قصص	....	إطلاقًا	....
بري	....	مشروع	....
وذة	....	عطلة نهاية الأسبوع	....

Lesson (3)

رطوم / زلومة) الفيل	....	التسوق	....
نمر	....	سوق	....
خيل	....	كشك - دكانة صغيرة	....
غاف	....	زر	....
بة الداما	....	شراع	....

Lessons (4 & 5)

جدة ألعاب	....	وصف	....
ور - رسومات	....	يهزم	....
بدع	....	ألعاب الفيديو	....
بني	....	بالخارج	....
مغامرة	....	مشكلة	....

Help your child dictate these words.

ساعد طفلك في إملاء هذه الكلمات.

Activities on Unit (8)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. When I was younger, I had a box of ....

a) cakes b) toys c) marbles d) games

2. I had a go on my ....

a) skateboard b) rollerblades c) bike d) car

3. My .... liked playing with a doll's house.

a) sister b) brother c) mom d) dad

4. My brother usually .... me when we played board games.

a) paint b) laugh c) hit d) beat

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I .... lots of stories.

a) made up b) made in c) made of d) made for

2. You can go quite fast on ....

a) hopscotch b) rollerblades c) train set d) board games

3. My brother is really good at .... and seek.

a) cuddly b) action c) hide d) ride

4. There are some wooden toys on the toy ....

a) bank b) stall c) steel d) sail

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

creative - hour - week - play - because

My favorite games are video games. I don't 1) .... them very often, though. I play for an 2) .... on the weekend. I like these games 3) .... you can be 4) .... and make something new.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Video games have become one of the most popular games. All chi play them. I like all kinds of games. I have a good time playing with my fri Some of the images in modern video games are amazing. I've got a new ga console. I like playing adventure games where you can go to different plac find something important or solve a problem. However, video games can b a problem when you play them too much.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The text is about ....
   a) football b) video games c) board games d) tennis
2. Don't play video games for a .... tir
   a) short b) long c) much d) good
3. The underlined word "modern" in the text is opposite to ....
   a) new b) old c) long d) small

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What does the underlined pronoun "them" refer to? ....
5. Summarize the text in one sentence. ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences

1. football - think - I - so - is - exciting - . ...
2. didn't - train sets - Adam - at all - like - . ...
3. games - were - What - you - at - good - ? ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brack

1. I prefer .... (play) board games to skipp
2. I think hopscotch is .... (at all) good, but I prefer hide and se

7 Punctuate the following.

- hide and seek is really interesting ....

8 Write a paragraph of FIFTY (50) words about:

Your favorite toys

Guiding elements:

(doll's house - action figure)

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Al-Azhar Corner

1 Read and complete the dialog with the following words.

rollerblades - box - playing - action - What

Omar : Did you visit your grandma yesterday?
Adam : Yes, I did. I found a 1).. of my old toys.
Omar : 2) .... did you find in there?
Adam : There was an 3).. figure.
Omar : I loved 4).. with action figures.
Adam : What's your favorite toy?
Omar : I like 5).. .

Read and complete the dialog with the following words.

good - enjoy - fine - up - really

Sarah : Hi, Mona. How are you?
Mona : Hi, Sarah. I'm 1).. .
Sarah : What did you 2)......................... playing when you were younger?
Mona : I 3).. enjoyed riding my bike.
Sarah : What were you 4).. at?
Mona : I was very good at making 5)... stories.

2 Read and circle the odd one out and replace it.

1.	shopping	Cairo	working	swimming	(.........................)
2.	mom	uncle	dad	brother	(.........................)
3.	stall	market	play	shop	(.........................)
4.	skipping	hide and seek	bank	hopscotch	(.........................)
5.	apples	doll's house	marbles	skateboard	(.........................)

Read and circle the odd one out and replace it.

1.	cuddly toy	train set	marbles	running	(.........................)
2.	enjoy	book	prefer	like	(.........................)
3.	but	really	very	so	(.........................)
4.	yellow	game	red	green	(.........................)
5.	running	climbing	bike	cycling	(.........................)

Unit 9

What's the story?

In this unit, the students will ...

- listen and read about Goha and his stories.
- understand and discuss what makes a good story.
- use the past continuous.
- write the beginning and ending of a short story.
- listen to a short story about a boy and a wolf.
- use sequencing adverbs.
- learn how to say words with the sound /w/.
- take part in a cooperative storytelling project.

GOHA'S STORIES

Key vocabulary

كلمات أساسية

setting	narrator	راوي
characters	moral	مغزى - عبرة - الدرس المستفاد
ending	story	قصة

Extra vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

man	clever	ماهر
son	great	عظيم
review	details	تفاصيل
market	difference	اختلاف
countryside	popular	شعبي - محبوب
journey	known	معروف
let	country	دولة
different	Sudan	السودان
should	Algeria	الجزائر
must be	Morocco	دولة المغرب
tired	main	أساسي - رئيسي
both		

Definitions

تعريفات

characters	the people or animals in a story	الشخصيات
ending	the last part of a story	خاتمة - نهاية
setting	the time and place where a story happens	المكان والزمان
moral	the lesson you learn from a story	مغزى - عبرة - الدرس المستفاد
narrator	the person who tells the story	راوي

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
carry	يحمل	carried	carried
pass	يمر	passed	passed
happen	يحدث	happened	happened
want	يريد	wanted	wanted
love	يُحب	loved	loved

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
write	يكتب	wrote	written
go	يذهب	went	gone
ride	يركب	rode	ridden
give	يعطي	gave	given
teach	يُعلم	taught	taught
let	يسمح / يدع	let	let
know	يعرف	knew	known

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

many years ago	منذ عدة سنوات	take turns	يتبادل الأدوار
So do I.	وأنا أيضا (كذلك).	all over the world	في كل أنحاء العالم
the same	نفس الشيء	(be) right about that	على حق في ذلك
write **about**	يكتب عن	take place **in**	يحدث في

Did you know?

People have told stories for thousands of years.

The Ancient Egyptians **carved** pictures to tell stories.

لقد روى الناس القصص منذ آلاف السنين. لقد نحت المصريون القدماء الصور لرواية القصص.



Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Lesson (1)

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.



Why do the man and his son carry the donkey?

Mom : What are you doing, Lama?

ماذا تفعلين يا لاما؟

Lama : I'm writing a review of one of Goha's stories. The one about a man who goes to the market with his son and a donkey. The **setting** is the countryside, many years ago. Two of the **characters** – the man and his son – take turns riding the donkey because it's a long journey. When the boy rides the donkey, the people they pass say he should let his father ride. When the man rides the donkey, they say that he should let his son have a turn. Then, they say the donkey must be tired. So, in the **ending** of the story, they both carry the donkey!

أنا أكتب مقالة نقدية لإحدى قصص جحا. قصة الرجل الذي يذهب إلى السوق ومعه ابنه وحماره. المكان هو الريف، والزمان منذ سنوات عديدة. يتناوب اثنان من الشخصيات – الرجل وابنه – على ركوب الحمار لأنها رحلة طويلة. عندما يركب الصبي الحمار، يقول الناس الذين يمرون إنه يجب أن يترك والده يركب. عندما يركب الرجل الحمار، يقولون إنه يجب أن يترك ابنه يأخذ دوره. ثم يقولون إن الحمار بالتأكيد مُتعب. لذلك في نهاية القصة كلاهما يحمل الحمار!

Mom : Haha! His stories are both funny and clever, aren't they?

هاها! قصصه مضحكة وذكية، أليس كذلك؟

Lama : Yes, they are. He's a great **narrator**, too. I love the details he gives about the characters, the setting, and everything that happens.

نعم هي كذلك. إنه راوي عظيم أيضًا. أحب التفاصيل التي يقدمها عن الشخصيات والمكان والزمان وكل ما يحدث.

Mom : So do I. In fact, his stories are popular all over the world. But he's known by different names. For example, in Sudan, he's Jawha. In Algeria, he's Jeha, and in Morocco, he's Jha.

وأنا أيضًا. في الواقع، تحظى قصصه بشعبية في جميع أنحاء العالم. لكنه معروف بأسماء مختلفة. على سبيل المثال، في السودان، هو جوحا. في الجزائر اسمه جيحا، وفي المغرب جها.

Lama : Are the stories the same in every country?

هل القصص نفس الشيء في كل بلد؟

Mom : There are some differences, but they all have a **moral** that Goha wants to teach us. What do you think is the moral of this story?

هناك بعض الاختلافات ولكنها جميعًا بها مغزى يريد جحا تعليمه. في رأيك ما مغزى هذه القصة؟

Lama : That you can't make everyone happy.

أنه لا يمكنك إسعاد الجميع.

Mom : I think Goha is right about that!

أعتقد أن جحا على حق في ذلك!

Lama : Me, too. I'm happy that I know which story to write about, though!

وأنا أيضاً. أنا سعيدة لأنني أعرف أي قصة سأكتب عنها، رغم ذلك!

General Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I'm writing a review of one of Goha's ....
   a) stories b) books c) plays d) films
2. The story is about a man who goes to the ....
   a) zoo b) library c) school d) market
3. The .... is the countryside, many years ago.
   a) ending b) setting c) narrator d) characters
4. The man and his son take turns riding the ....
   a) bus b) bike c) donkey d) car

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. .... are the people or animals in a story.
   a) Endings b) Characters c) Settings d) Narrators
2. The .... is the time and place where a story happens.
   a) setting b) ending c) moral d) character
3. The .... is the lesson you learn from a story.
   a) moral b) character c) setting d) ending
4. The .... is the person who tells the story.
   a) ending b) character c) setting d) narrator

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

man - setting - characters - journey - donkey

I'm writing a review of one of Goha's stories. The one about a 1) .... who goes to the market with his son and a donkey. The 2) .... is the countryside, many years ago. Two of the 3) .... – the man and his son – take turns riding the donkey because it's a long 4) ....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

4 Read the text then answer the questions.

I'm Lama. I'm writing a review of one of Goha's stories. The one about a man who goes to the market with his son and a donkey. The setting is the countryside, many years ago. Two of the characters – the man and his son – take turns riding the donkey because it's a long journey. When the boy rides the donkey, the people they pass say he should let his father ride. When the man rides the donkey, they say that he should let his son have a turn. Then, they say the donkey must be tired. So, in the ending of the story, they both carry the donkey! In Goha's stories there is a moral. The moral in this story is that you can't make everyone happy.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Lama is writing a .... of one of Goha's stories.
   a) **review** b) **homework** c) **notebook** d) **search**
2. The underlined pronoun "he" refers to ....
   a) **Goha** b) **son** c) **Lama** d) **donkey**
3. The man and his son are the .... of the story.
   a) **setting** b) **characters** c) **narrators** d) **endings**

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What is the moral of this story? ....
5. What do they do at the end of the story? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. are - main - There - two - characters - the - in - story - .
   ....
2. the stories - same - Are - the - every - in - country - ?
   ....
3. known - Goha - as - in - Jha - is - Morocco - .
   ....

6 Punctuate the following.

- why do the man and his son carry the donkey ....

7 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Your favorite story

Guiding elements:

(Goha - man - market - donkey)

Lesson (2) A MESSAGE IN A BOTTLE

Key vocabulary ات أساسية

message	رسالة	grandparents	الأجداد	bottle	اجة
surf	يركب الأمواج	beginning	بداية	important event	ث مهم

Extra vocabulary ات إضافية

near	قريب	granddad	جد	forest	ابة
quiet	هادئ	trash	قمامة	path	مر
beautiful	جميل	better	أفضل	scared	ائف
sand	رمل	idea	فكرة	weather	قس
glass	زجاج	space	فضاء		

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة — **Irregular verbs** أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P	Present		Past	P.P
surf	يركب الأمواج	surfed	surfed	put	يضع	put	put
fold	يطوي	folded	folded	throw	يلقي / يرمى	threw	thrown
arrive	يصل	arrived	arrived	ring	يرن	rang	rung
watch	يشاهد	watched	watched	grow up	يكبر	grew up	grown up
call	يتصل	called	called	forget	ينسى	forgot	forgotten
look	ينظر	looked	looked	send	يرسل	sent	sent
score	يحرز - يسجل هدف	scored	scored	get	يحصل على	got	got
hope	يأمل	hoped	hoped	come	يأتي	came	come
follow	يتبع	followed	followed	shine	تشرق - يلمع	shone	shone

Important expressions and prepositions يرات وحروف جر هامة

by the sea	بجوار البحر	one day	ذات يوم	let's + inf	يا بنا + (مصدر الفعل)
a piece of	قطعة من	come in	يدخل	throw out to sea	لقي في البحر
back at	بالعودة إلى	walk along	يسير على امتداد	throw into sea	لقي في البحر
many years passed	مرت سنوات عديدة			forget about	سى بشأن

Help your child identify these words.
عد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Lesson (2)

Listen and read the beginning of the story.

Tom's grandparents lived by the sea. The beach near their house was quiet and beautiful, and he loved to go there with them. They swam, **surfed**, and played games on the sand.

عاش أجداد توم بجانب البحر. كان الشاطئ بالقرب من منزلهم هادئًا وجميلًا، وكان يحب الذهاب معهم إلى هناك. لقد سبحوا وركبوا الأمواج ولعبوا الألعاب على الرمال.

One day, they were swimming in the sea when Tom saw a glass bottle in the water. "Look, Granddad," he said. "Let's put it in the trash."

في أحد الأيام، كانوا يسبحون في البحر عندما رأى توم زجاجة في الماء. قال: "انظر يا جدي." "هيا بنا نضعها في سلة المهملات."

"I have a better idea," said Granddad. "Let's write a message in a bottle."

قال الجد: "لدي فكرة أفضل." "دعنا نكتب رسالة في زجاجة."

"What's a message in a bottle?" "ما الرسالة التي في الزجاجة؟"

"You write a message on a piece of paper, fold the paper, and put it in the bottle, then throw the bottle out to sea for someone else to find."

"تكتب رسالة على قطعة من الورق، ثم تطوي الورقة وتضعها في الزجاجة، ثم ترمي الزجاجة في البحر ليجدها شخص آخر."

Back at the house, Granddad washed the glass bottle and gave Tom a pen and a piece of paper. Tom was writing his message when Grandma came in the room.

عند عودته إلى المنزل، قام الجد بغسل الزجاجة وأعطى توم قلمًا وقطعة من الورق. كان توم يكتب رسالته عندما دخلت الجدة إلى الغرفة.

"What are you doing, Tom?" asked Grandma. سألت الجدة "ماذا تفعل يا توم؟"

"I'm writing a message in a bottle," answered Tom. "Do you want to read it?"

أجاب توم: "أنا أكتب رسالة في زجاجة". "هل تريدين قراءتها؟"

Hello!
My name's Tom. I'm 11 years old and I'm from the USA.
My favorite things are space, animals, and the color blue.
What are your favorite things? Please email back to tell me!
My email address is tom@beachnet.usa
From Tom



The next day, Tom and his grandparents went to the beach to throw the bottle into the sea.

وفي اليوم التالي، ذهب توم وأجداده إلى الشاطئ لإلقاء الزجاجة في البحر.

Many years passed, and Tom grew up. He and his grandparents forgot about the message in a bottle. Then, one day, Tom was working when Granddad sent him a message....

مرت سنوات عديدة، وكبُر توم. لقد نسي هو وأجداده الرسالة الموجودة في الزجاجة. وفي أحد الأيام، كان توم يعمل عندما أرسل له جده رسالة....

- **Listen and read again. Make notes about the beginning of the story.**

1. The characters are ....
2. The setting is ....
3. The first important event is ....

- Read the start of another story.

My friend Ali and I were playing in the forest yesterday. It was a lovely afternoon and the sun was shining. We were near my home, and we we hoping to see some interesting animals and birds. We were walking alo the path when suddenly we saw a little house in the distance. "Let's and look at the house," said Ali. I was a bit scared and didn't want to g but I followed him. Near the house, there was ... .

أنا وصديقي علي نلعب في الغابة بالأمس. لقد كانت فترة ما بعد الظهر جميلة وكانت الشمس مشرقة. كنا بالقرب من منزلي، وكنا أن نرى بعض الحيوانات والطيور المثيرة للاهتمام. كنا نسير على طول الطريق عندما رأينا فجأة منزلاً صغيراً من بعيد. قال علي: بنا نذهب وننظر إلى المنزل". كنت خائفًا بعض الشيء ولم أرغب في الذهاب، لكنني تبعته. وبالقرب من المنزل كان هناك ....

- Write a beginning of another story about finding something on a beach. Before you write, make notes to answer the questions.

1. Which beach were you on? ....
2. What time of day was it? ....
3. Who were you with? ....
4. What was the weather like? ....
5. What were you doing? ....
6. What did you find? ....

- Use your notes to write the beginning of your story.

Yesterday, I was on the beach near my house. It was morning and it was sunny. I was walking with my friend when we ....

....

....

- Work in pairs. Role play an interview.

Where were you?

I was on the beach near my house.

What were you doing?

We were swimming.

What was the weather like?

It was sunny.



Help your child deal with such questions.

طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (2)



The Past Continuous Tense

زمن الماضي المستمر

Usage الاستخدام

- **We use the past continuous in stories to say what was happening at a particular time in the past.**

نستخدم الماضي المستمر في القصص لنقول ما كان يحدث في وقت معين في الماضي.

eg. Yesterday afternoon, John was walking his dog.

- **We can also use the past continuous with *when* and the past simple to show when one action interrupted another in the past:**

يمكننا أيضا استخدام الماضي المستمر مع الرابط when والماضي البسيط لبيان أن حدث ما قطع حدث آخر في الماضي:

eg. I was reading a book when my dad came.

Form التكوين

I / He / She / It / اسم مفرد + was
You / We / They / اسم جمع + were + (v + ing).

- I was doing my homework yesterday evening.
- We were playing computer games.

Negative النفي

I / He / She / It / اسم مفرد + wasn't
You / We / They / اسم جمع + weren't + (v + ing).

- He was not watching TV.
- They weren't riding their bikes.

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:

was not ⟶ wasn't were not ⟶ weren't

Help your child to identify the past continuous tense. ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على زمن الماضي المستمر.

Question السؤال

Yes/No question

Was + I / he / she / it / اسم مفرد + (v + ing)?
Were + you / we / they / اسم جمع

- Was Ali swimming? - Yes, he was. - No, he wasn't.
- Were they surfing? - Yes, they were. - No, they weren't.

Wh- question

Q.W + was + I / he / she / it / اسم مفرد + (v + ing)?
Q.W + were + you / we / they / اسم جمع

- What was she doing? - She was eating.
- What were they doing? - They were playing on the beach.

Keywords الكلمات الدالة

at 5 yesterday	في الساعة الخامسة أمس	yesterday evening	مساء أمس
yesterday morning	صباح أمس	when	عندما

When + ماضي بسيط , ماضي مستمر

- When we saw a little house, we were walking along the path.

ماضي مستمر + when + ماضي بسيط

- I was watching TV when you called me.

تذكر

• عندما ينتهي الفعل بحرف الـ (e) غير منطوق (قبله حرف ساكن) تحذف (e) قبل إضافة (ing).

ride ⟶ riding arrive ⟶ arriving

• إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف ساكن مسبوقًا بحرف متحرك نضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير قبل إضافة (ing) (بشرط أن يكون الفعل مكون من مقطع واحد).

get ⟶ getting swim ⟶ swimming

Help your child to identify the past continuous tense.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على زمن الماضي المستمر.



Practice

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Yesterday morning, Ali .... his homework.
   a) does   b) was doing   c) did   d) doing
2. They were .... a story.
   a) read   b) reads   c) reading   d) to reading
3. I was eating when the phone ....
   a) ring   b) rings   c) rang   d) ringing
4. .... you looking at your phone when I saw you?
   a) Was   b) Is   c) Were   d) Are
5. Fatin .... playing computer games.
   a) was   b) were   c) does   d) did
6. Dad was reading a newspaper when Lina ....
   a) come   b) comes   c) was coming   d) came

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. Hamza .... (were) watching a football match.
2. Ayman was .... (ride) his bike.
3. Hani was doing his homework .... (where) he got a text message.
4. Hend and I .... (play) when her father arrived.
5. Aya .... (not watch) TV when I called her.
6. Ali was driving his car when his phone .... (ring).
7. Sami .... (were) walking with his friend.
8. What were you .... (do)?
9. I was .... (walk) along the path.
10. Ali and I .... (was) playing in the forest.

General Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Tom is .... years o...
   a) ten b) eleven c) nine d) twelve
2. He is from the ....
   a) Egypt b) France c) Chine d) USA
3. His favorite things are ...., animals and the color bl...
   a) space b) plants c) clothes d) birds
4. His email .... is tom@beachnet.u...
   a) title b) name c) address d) nickname

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. I get a text .... from my frie...
   a) message b) ring c) call d) tone
2. The bottle is made of .... It's easy to bre...
   a) stone b) wood c) glass d) cloth
3. They loved water sports. They .... and swa...
   a) surfed b) kicked c) jumped d) served
4. I write the message on a piece .... pap...
   a) in b) on c) at d) of
5. They .... the bottle out to sea for someone else to fin...
   a) get b) throw c) read d) teach
6. Let's .... it in the tras...
   a) put b) puts c) putting d) was puttin...

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

walking - hoping - shining - saw - see

My friend Ali and I were playing in the forest yesterday. It was a lovely afternoon and the sun was 1) .... We were near m... home, and we were 2) .... to see some interesting animals an... birds. We were 3) .... along the path when suddenly w... 4) .... a little house in the distance. "Let's go and look at the house," said Ali. I was a bit scared and didn't want to go, but I followed him.

 Help your child deal with such questions.

...عد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (2)



Read the text then answer the questions.

Tom's grandparents lived by the sea. The beach near their house was quiet and beautiful, and he loved to go there with them. They swam, surfed, and played games on the sand. One day, they were swimming in the sea when Tom saw a glass bottle in the water. "Look, Granddad," he said. "Let's put it in the trash." "I have a better idea," said Granddad. "Let's write a message in a bottle." "What's a message in a bottle?" Tom asked "You write a message on a piece of paper, fold the paper, and put it in the bottle, then throw the bottle out to sea for someone else to find." Granddad replied.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Tom's grandparents lived by the ....
   a) **sea** b) **lake** c) **river** d) **farm**
2. The beach near their house was ....
   a) **bad** b) **noisy** c) **quiet** d) **ugly**
3. The underlined word "near" is opposite to ....
   a) **small** b) **far** c) **big** d) **tall**

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What was Tom doing when he saw a glass bottle in the water?

....

5. What was the bottle made of?

....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. was - I - Yesterday - playing - football - afternoon, - .

....

2. Ali - morning - yesterday - What - doing- was - ?

....

3. lived - Tom's - sea - by - the - parents - .

....

4. was - a newspaper - Dad - Lina - when - came - reading - .

....

5. TV - I - when - you - wasn't - me - called - watching - .

....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. The weather was .... (rain) yesterday morning
2. The sun .... (were) shining
3. .... (Was) you playing computer games yesterday morning
4. I was reading a book when my mom .... (arrive)
5. Hady was .... (watch) a football match when Egypt scored a goal
6. Was Hend looking at her phone .... (what) you saw her in the street
7. They .... (listen) to music when the man shouted
8. You were studying for the exam when the car .... (stop) outside
9. They were drawing squares when their friends .. (come) to talk to them
10. I .... (work) when my friend sent me a message

7 Punctuate the following.

- which beach were you on

....

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Finding something on a beach

Guiding elements:

- Which beach were you on?
- What time of day was it?
- Who were you with?

....

....

....

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (3) THE BOY WHO CRIED WOLF

Key vocabulary كلمات أساسية


sheep
أغنام


shepherd
راعي


villager
قروي


wolf
ذئب

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

main character	شخصية رئيسية	angry	غضبان	untrue	كاذب / غير صحيح
real	حقيقي	lonely	يشعر بالوحدة	idea	فكرة
sorry	حزين	bored	شاعر بالملل	fun	متعة - مرح
joke	نكتة				

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past	P.P
annoy	يضايق	annoyed	annoyed
cry	يصرخ / يبكى / يصيح	cried	cried
believe	يصدق	believed	believed
shout	يصرخ	shouted	shouted
save	ينقذ	saved	saved
eat	يأكل	ate	eaten
tell	يخبر	told	told

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

at the end	في النهاية
on your own	بمفردك
many times	عدة مرات
waste time	يهدر الوقت - يضيع الوقت
angry with	غاضب من

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Sequencing adverbs ظروف التسلسل

We use sequencing adverbs to say when things happen. They help us to understand the order of events. This makes the text easier to follow.

نستخدم ظروف التسلسل لنقول متى تحدث الأشياء. فهي تساعدنا في فهم ترتيب الأحداث. وهذا يجعل النص أسهل للمتابعة.

First أولًا Next التالي Then ثم After that بعد ذلك Finally أخيرًا/ في النهاية

The Boy Who Cried Wolf

- Peter was lonely and bored. He wanted some fun. He had an idea.
- First, he shouted "Wolf"! and the villagers came to help and save the sheep.
- Next, he said there was no wolf and it was a joke.
- Then, Peter did it again.
- After that, the villagers were very angry and said he shouldn't waste their time.
- Finally, a real wolf came. It ate the sheep. Peter was very sorry.

- **Notes to help you to write a story using sequencing adverbs.**

- First, plan your story, and decide what it will be about.

أولاً، خطط لقصتك، وقرر ما الذي ستتناوله.

- Next, write a first draft of your story.

بعد ذلك، اكتب المسودة الأولى لقصتك.

- After that, check and correct your spelling and grammar.

بعد ذلك، قم بالتدقيق والتصحيح الإملائي والنحوي.

- Finally, share it with friends and enjoy!

وأخيرا، قم بمشاركتها مع الأصدقاء واستمتع!

Choose the correct words to complete the recipe.

Salatet Zabadee

1. (First / Then) ...., take a cucumber and cut it in pieces.
2. (Next / Finally) ...., mix the yogurt and mint in a bowl.
3. (After that / First) ...., add some garlic and salt if you like.
4. (Next / Finally) ...., take it to the table for everyone to enjoy.

Help your child use sequencing adverbs.

ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم ظروف التسلسل.



Listen and repeat.

استمع وردد.

/w/ sound

water ماء	walk يمشي	wolf ذئب
west غرب	wave موجة	
whisper يهمس	whale حوت	white أبيض

- Complete the words with w or wh. Listen, check and repeat.

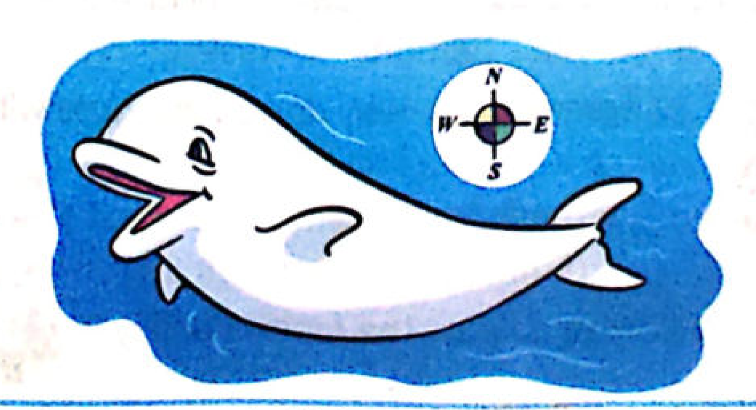
1) __arm 2) __alk 3) __at

4) __ave 5) __ere 6) __est

- Listen, read, and repeat the sentences:

1. A white whale went west.

2. A wolf whispered, "What? When?"



Help your child learn how to say words with the sound /w/. ساعد طفلك أن يتعلم كيف ينطق كلمات بها الصوت /w/.



It is a stressed part of a word. It is said more strongly than the rest of it. مقطع المشدد هو جزء من كلمة يتم نطقه بشكل أقوى من باقي الكلمة.

- When a word has a **prefix**, the prefix usually **isn't** stressed.

ندما تحتوي الكلمة على بادئة، عادةً لا يتم التشديد على البادئة.

- If the base word has one syllable, the stress is on the **base** word.

ا كانت الكلمة الأساسية تتكون من مقطع واحد يتم التشديد على أصل الكلمة.



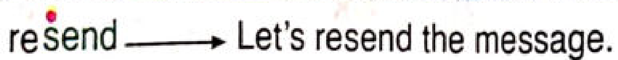
dislike → Why do you dislike surfing?







unhappy → He was unhappy.



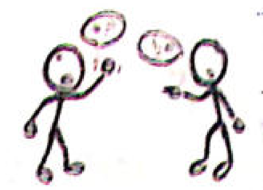




replay → Please replay the video.

incorrect → This answer is incorrect.

1 + 1 = 3



disagree → Why do you disagree with him?



untidy → The room is untidy.

Help your child learn about the stressed syllable.

د طفلك أن يتعلم المقطع المشدد.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. There was once a boy who looked after some ....
   a) cows   b) sheep   c) goats   d) donkeys
2. The boy was ....
   a) bored   b) excited   c) happy   d) clever
3. One day, he played a trick on the ....
   a) students   b) tourists   c) visitors   d) villagers
4. The villagers came up the hill to .... the sheep.
   a) eat   b) look after   c) save   d) carry

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The main .... in the story was a bit boring. I didn't like him.
   a) moral   b) character   c) setting   d) ending
2. My little brother always .... me when he is bored.
   a) annoys   b) reads   c) eats   d) drinks
3. If you tell untrue stories, no one will .... you.
   a) hate   b) eat   c) believe   d) work
4. ...., a real wolf came. It ate the sheep.
   a) First   b) Next   c) Then   d) Finally
5. If you tell .... stories no one will believe you.
   a) true   b) right   c) untrue   d) exact

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

Next - villagers - shouted - fun - wolf

Peter was lonely and bored. He wanted some 1) .... He had an idea. First, he 2) .... "Wolf"! and the villagers came to help and save the sheep. 3) ...., he said there was no wolf and it was a joke. Then, Peter did it again. After that, the 4) .... were very angry and said he shouldn't waste their time. Finally, a real wolf came. It ate the sheep. Peter was very sorry.

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. main - Why - the villagers - the - character - annoy - did - ?

....

2. and - bored - Peter - lonely- was - .

....

3. wolf - the - What - eat - at - did - the end - ?

....

4. do - Why - disagree - him - with - you - ?

....

5. like - indoors - I - playing - sister - my - with - .

....

6. is - the main - the - character - Who - in - story - ?

....

5 Punctuate the following.

- it's better to work on your own

....

6 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

How to make salatet zabadee

Guiding elements:

(First - cucumber - mix - yogurt)

....

....

....

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ث أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lessons (4 & 5)

WRITING: THE ENDING OF A STORY
PROJECT

Vocabulary الكلمات

reply	يرد / رد	coast	ساحل	boat	قارب
weekend	عطلة نهاية الأسبوع	sailing	الإبحار	excited	متحمس
France	فرنسا	favorite	مفضل	later	فيما بعد
woman	إمرأة	things	أشياء	plane	طائرة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
travel	يسافر	traveled	traveled
enjoy	يستمتع بـ	enjoyed	enjoyed
pass	يمر	passed	passed
visit	يزور	visited	visited
laugh	يضحك	laughed	laughed
decide to	يقرر أن	decided to	decided to

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
send	يرسل	sent	sent
find	يجد	found	found
mean	يعني	meant	meant
grow up	يكبر	grew up	grown up
come	يأتي	came	come
feel	يشعر	felt	felt

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

read about	يقرأ عن	come into	يدخل
travel over	يسافر لأكثر من	That's a great idea!	هذه فكرة رائعة!
welcome to	مرحبًا بك في	a long way	طريق طويل

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

- **Read this ending of the story:**

Many years passed and Tom grew up. He and his grandparents forgot about the message in a bottle. Then, one day, Tom was working when Granddad sent him a message.

نوات عديدة وكبر توم. لقد نسي هو وأجداده الرسالة الموجودة في الزجاجة. وفي أحد الأيام، كان توم يعمل عندما أرسل له جده رسالة.

> Tom, you won't believe it! We have a reply to our message in a bottle!
> وم، لن تصدق ذلك! لدينا رد على رسالتنا في زجاجة!

That weekend, Tom went to his grandparents' house.

"A man in France found the message," said Granddad. "Look, here is h reply."

في هذا الأسبوع، ذهب توم إلى منزل أجداده.

جدي: "عثر رجل في فرنسا على الرسالة". "انظر، ها هو رده."



From : Hugo

To : Tom

Hello Tom,

My name is Hugo and I live in Biarritz, France. I live on the coast and love sailing my boat. Last week, I was sailing when I saw something in the water – your message in a bottle! This means it traveled over 6,000 kilometers.

I enjoyed reading about your favorite things. My favorite things are my boat, mangoes, and the color green.

You are very welcome to come and visit me in France one day!

With best wishes,

Hugo

مرحبا توم،

اسمي هوجو وأعيش في بياريتز، فرنسا. أعيش على الساحل وأحب الإبحار بقاربي. في الأسبوع الماضي، كنت أبحر عندما رأيت شيئًا في الماء - رسالتك في زجاجة! وهذا يعني أنها سافرت أكثر من ٦٠٠٠ كيلومتر. لقد استمتعت بالقراءة عن الأشياء المفضلة لديك. أشيائي المفضلة هي القارب والمانجو واللون الأخضر. أنت مرحب بك جدًا لزيارتي في فرنسا يومًا ما!

مع أطيب التمنيات،

هوجو

Help your child write the ending of short story

ساعد طفلك أن يكتب نهاية قصة قصيرة.

Tom was very excited. "Wow, our message traveled a really long way!"
Later that evening, Tom was writing something when Granddad came into the room.
"What are you doing, Tom?"
"I'm writing to Hugo."
"Why, are you going to visit him?"
"You and I are both going to visit him!"
"That's a great idea," laughed Granddad. "But it's a long way, so let's go by plane!"

كان توم متحمسًا جدًا. "رائع، لقد قطعت رسالتنا طريقًا طويلًا جدًا!"
في وقت لاحق من ذلك المساء، كان توم يكتب شيئًا ما عندما دخل جده الغرفة.
"ماذا تفعل يا توم؟"
"أنا أكتب إلى هوجو."
"لماذا، هل ستزوره؟"
"أنا وأنت سنزوره!"
ضحك الجد: "إنها فكرة رائعة". "ولكن الطريق طويل، لذلك دعنا نذهب بالطائرة!"

A good ending



A good ending tells you what happens to the characters and how they feel at the end of the story.
تخبرك النهاية الجيدة بما يحدث للشخصيات وما يشعرون به في نهاية القصة.

- Write another ending to the story.

From : ....
To : Tom..............................

Hello Tom,
My name is .... and I live in ....
Last week, I was .... when ....
I enjoyed reading about your favorite things. My favorite things are
....

Tom felt .... Then he and Granddad decided to
....

Help your child write an ending to a short story.
ساعد طفلك أن يكتب نهاية قصة قصيرة.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Hugo lives in Biarritz, ...
   a) France b) Egypt c) China d) USA
2. Hugo loves .... his boat
   a) driving b) riding c) carrying d) sailing
3. Hugo saw something in the ....
   a) sky b) land c) water d) ground
4. The message in a bottle traveled over .... kilometers
   a) 6 b) 6,000 c) 600 d) 60

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Many years .... and Tom grew up.
   a) passed b) traveled c) worked d) visited
2. Grandpa .... me a message.
   a) ran b) played c) took d) sent
3. Hugo sent a .... to our message.
   a) talk b) reply c) boat d) great
4. I enjoyed reading .... interesting things.
   a) in b) on c) about d) at
5. Our message traveled a really long ....
   a) way b) away c) plane d) why

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

working - grandparents - France - believe - popular

Many years passed and Tom grew up. He and his 1) .... forgot about the message in a bottle. Then, one day, Tom was 2) .... when Granddad sent him a message. Tom, you won't 3) .... it! We have a reply to our message in a bottle! That weekend, Tom went to his grandparents' house. "A man in 4) .... found the message," said Granddad. "Look, here is his reply."

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. Hugo - doing - What - when - he - the message - found - was - ?

....

2. was - yesterday - writing - Tom - a message - morning - .

....

3. to - I - to France - by - travel - decided - plane - .

....

4. you - Why - him - are - going - visit - to - ?

....

5. welcome - You - me - are - and - to come - visit - .

....

5 Punctuate the following.

- my name's Ali and I live in egypt.

....

6 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

A short story

Guiding elements:

(characters - setting - main events - ending)

....

....

....

....

....

....

Writing Corner

A beginning of a story

My friend Ali and I were playing in the forest yesterday. It was a love afternoon and the sun was shining. We were near my home, and we wer hoping to see some interesting animals and birds. We were walking alon the path when suddenly we saw a little house in the distance. "Let's go an look at the house," said Ali. I was a bit scared and didn't want to go, but I followed him. Near the house, there was ... .

The boy who cried "wolf"

Peter was lonely and bored. He wanted some fun. He had an ide First, he shouted "Wolf"! and the villagers came to help and save the shee Next, he said there was no wolf and it was a joke. Then, Peter did it agai After that, the villagers were very angry and said he shouldn't waste the time. Finally, a real wolf came. It ate the sheep. Peter was very sorry.

A reply to a message



From : Hugo
To : Tom

Hello Tom,

My name is Hugo and I live in Biarritz, France. I live on the coast and I love sailing my boat. Last week, I was sailing when I saw something in the water – your message in a bottle! This means it traveled over 6,000 kilometers. I enjoyed reading about your favorite things. My favorite things are my boat, mangoes, and the color green. You are very welcome to come and visit me in France one day!

With best wishes,

Hugo

Help your child write paragraphs.

ساعد طفلك أن يكتب فقرات

Review on Unit (9)

Vocabulary

setting	المكان والزمان	message	رسالة	reply	يرد / رد
moral	مغزى - الدرس المستفاد	surf	يركب الأمواج	story	قصة
narrator	راوي	grandparents	الأجداد	bottle	زجاجة
ending	خاتمة - نهاية	sheep	أغنام	weekend	عطلة نهاية الأسبوع
beginning	بداية	shepherd	راعي	villager	قروي
characters	الشخصيات	coast	ساحل	boat	قارب
events	أحداث	sailing	الإبحار	excited	متحمس
review	مقال نقدي	favorite	مفضل	later	فيما بعد
man	رجل	things	أشياء	plane	طائرة
journey	رحلة	work	يعمل	travel	يسافر

Pronunciation

/w/ sound			
water	ماء	walk	يمشي
wolf	ذئب	whisper	يهمس
wave	موجة	white	أبيض
west	غرب	whale	حوت

Language

The Past Continuous Tense زمن الماضي المستمر

- نستخدم الماضي المستمر ليدل على شئ كان يحدث في وقت معين في الماضي.

eg. Yesterday afternoon, John was walking his dog.

- يمكننا أيضًا استخدام الماضي المستمر لبيان أن حدثًا ما قطع حدثًا آخر.

ماضي بسيط + when + ماضي مستمر

eg. I was reading a book when my dad came home.

Sequencing adverbs ظروف التسلسل

First أولا Next التالي Then ثم After that بعد ذلك Finally أخيرًا

Dictation on Uni

Lesso

المكان والزمان	....
الشخصيات	....
خاتمة - نهاية	....
يعمل	....

Lesso

رسالة	....
الأجداد	....
زجاجة	....
يعيش	....

Lesso

أغنام	....
قروي	....
شخصية رئيسية	....
يضايق	....

Lesson

رد	....
قارب	....
الإبحار	....
مفضل	....
رجل	....
يستمتع	....

n (1)

الدرس المُستفاد

n (2)

الأمواج

n (3)

s (4 & 5)

نهاية الأسبوع

Help your child dictate these words.

طفلك في إملاء هذه الكلمات.

Activities on Unit (9)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Yesterday, I was on the ....
   a) beach   b) road   c) ship   d) garden
2. It was ....
   a) windy   b) sunny   c) rainy   d) cloudy
3. I was walking with my ....
   a) brother   b) sister   c) mother   d) friend
4. We saw a big ....
   a) shark   b) jellyfish   c) whale   d) starfish

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The .... of the story is that kindness is everything.
   a) moral   b) character   c) ending   d) narrator
2. The .... is the person who tells you the story.
   a) character   b) setting   c) narrator   d) moral
3. In the ...., we find out why the man was sad.
   a) narrator   b) ending   c) setting   d) character
4. The .... is London, in 1965.
   a) character   b) narrator   c) ending   d) setting

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

message - surfed - beach - sea - games

Tom's grandparents lived by the sea. The 1)................ near their house was quiet and beautiful, and he loved to go there with them. They swam, 2)................ and played games on the sand. One day they were swimming in the 3)................ when Tom saw a glass bottle in the water. His Granddad said, "Let's write a 4)................ in a bottle."

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

I'm Ali. I'm writing a review of one of Goha's stories. The one abo a man who goes to the market with his son and a donkey. The setting is t countryside, many years ago. Two of the characters – the man and his s – take turns riding the donkey because it's a long journey. When the b rides the donkey, the people they pass say he should let his father ri When the man rides the donkey, they say that he should let his son ha a turn. Then, they say the donkey must be tired. So, in the ending of t story, they both carry the donkey!

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Ali is writing a .... of one of Goha's stori
   a) note b) review c) comment d) post
2. The setting of this story is the ....
   a) market b) zoo c) countryside d) park
3. In the .... of the story, they carry the donk
   a) beginning b) middle c) ending d) starting

B) Answer the following questions.

4. Who are the characters of this story? ....
5. What's the moral of the story? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. and - a cucumber - First, - cut - take - in - it - pieces - .
....
2. you - Why - do - surfing - dislike - ?
....
3. riding - his - Ayman - was - bike - morning - yesterday - .
....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between bracket

1. He .... (play) the piano when his mom arrived hom
2. We were travelling to the city when Grandpa.. (call) u

7 Punctuate the following.

- a white whale went west ....

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about "A short story":

Guiding elements:

- The characters - Main events - The setting - The ending

Al-Azhar Corner

1 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

differences - narrator - funny - review - popular

Mom : What are you doing, Lama?
Lama : I'm writing a 1) .... of one of Goha's stories.
Mom : His stories are 2) .... , aren't they?
Lama : Yes, he is a great 3) .... , too.
Mom : His stories are 4) .... all over the world.
Lama : Are the stories the same in every country?
Mom : There are some 5) ....

Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

sunny - were - beach - weather - playing

Hoda : Where were you?
Shahd : I was on the 1) ....
Hoda : What 2) .... you doing?
Shahd : I was 3) .... with my friends.
Hoda : What was the 4) .... like?
Shahd : It was 5) ....

2 Read and circle the odd one out and replace it.

1.	Morocco	Cairo	Algeria	Sudan	(..............)
2.	writing	playing	riding	travel	(..............)
3.	read	grandma	grandpa	father	(..............)
4.	called	played	watch	arrived	(..............)
5.	Which	What	Where	Was	(..............)

Read and circle the odd one out and replace it.

1.	first	next	then	cried	(..............)
2.	donkey	man	son	woman	(..............)
3.	wolf	sheep	cow	annoy	(..............)
4.	angry	worked	bored	tired	(..............)
5.	listening	studying	shouted	playing	(..............)

Activities on Review (3)

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Playing is .... for us in lots of differer
   a) bad b) good c) harmful d) sad
2. When we play we feel ....
   a) happy b) sad c) bad d) angry
3. We also .... about the world and our
   a) write b) read c) learn d) teach
4. When we play, we learn to solve ....
   a) homework b) stories c) puzzles d) proble

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. A hot, dry climate can help to .... old ar
   a) damage b) preserve c) beat d) learn
2. Who is your favorite .... in this
   a) character b) setting c) ending d) event
3. I like playing video games with my brother, but he usually ....
   a) beats b) drinks c) built d) boats
4. This story has a very exciting .... It's in fores
   a big castle in the middle.
   a) setting b) character c) ending d) narrato

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

very - when - were - playing - First

One day, Fares and Ramy were 1)........................ hopscotc the school yard. They 2)........................ drawing squares using diffe colored chalk 3)........................ their friend Magdy came to talk to th "What are you playing?" asked Magdy. "It's hopscotch!" said Fares. "D you want to play?" "How do you play it?" asked Magdy. "It's 4)........................ easy," said Ramy.

 Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك في التعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Last summer, we went to a museum in the city. There were so many nteresting artifacts to see. My brother and I were walking around when we ound a room that had lots of animal statues. The Ancient Egyptians made ots of animal statues, because animals were very important in their culture. First, we saw different statues in gold and silver. Then we saw some in clay, stone, and granite, too. My favorite was a small snake made of metal. My brother liked a gold falcon with blue glass eyes. There were ots of cats made of brightly colored stone, too. The Ancient Egyptians adored cats. They believed that cats kept them safe.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. We went to a museum in the city last ....
   a) summer b) winter c) fall d) spring
2. My brother liked a gold .... with blue glass eyes.
   a) parrot b) eagle c) falcon d) snake
3. The underlined pronoun "They" refers to ....
   a) statues b) cats c) Ancient Egyptians d) animals

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What did they see? ....
5. Where did they go? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. toy - buys - Nadia - a cuddly - for - sister - her - .
   ....
2. are - Artifacts - and - both - jewelry - objects - .
   ....
3. when - you - What - doing - were - saw - you - snake - the - ?
   ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. We .... (walk) when we found a room.
2. I stopped .... (play) board games.

7 Punctuate the following.

- the park is in the middle of a city ....

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about "Our museum visit":

Guiding elements:

- Where did you go? - When did you go? - What did you see?

Unit 10

Free as a bird

In this unit, the students will ...

- listen, read, research, and write about bird and animal proverbs.
- listen to and understand a presentation about eco-tourism in Egypt.
- read and learn about eco-tourism and wildlife.
- use must / mustn't to talk about something we have to do.
- use the first conditional to talk about things that are likely to happen in the future.
- read advertisements for eco-tourism vacations in Egypt.
- read and learn about bird migration.
- say words with two or three syllables.
- read and write a blog about animal habitats.
- create an information leaflet about the Nile Delta.

Lesson (1) BIRDS OF A FEATHER



Key vocabulary كلمات أساسية

successful	ناجح	real	حقيقي
similar	متشابه	sensible	عاقل / حكيم
careful	حريص	proverb	قول مأثور

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

flock	يتجمع / سرب	group	مجموعة
strange	غريب	chickens	دجاج
nest	عش	plan	خطة
scary	مخيف	true	حقيقي
eagle	نسر	worm	دودة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
succeed	ينجح	succeeded	succeeded
flock	يتجمع	flocked	flocked
stay	يقيم / يمكث	stayed	stayed
mention	يذكر	mentioned	mentioned
count	يعد	counted	counted
hatch	يفقس	hatched	hatched
happen	يحدث	happened	happened
dare	يجرؤ	dared	dared

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
mean	يعني / يقصد	meant	meant
tell	يخبر	told	told
catch	يصطاد / يمسك	caught	caught
say	يقول	said	said
fly	يطير	flew	flown
sing	يغني	sang	sung
understand	يفهم	understood	understood

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Important expressions and prepositions
رات وحروف جر هامة

well-known	مشهور / معروف	How about...?	ماذا عن...؟
well done!	أحسنت!	You're getting the idea.	ت تفهم الفكرة.
try hard	يحاول بجد	make mistakes	رتكب أخطاء



Definitions
عريفات

sensible	If something is **sensible**, it is a good idea that someone has thought about carefully. عاقل / حكيم
successful	Someone who is **successful** tries to do something, and does it. ناجح
careful	A **careful** person tries hard not to make mistakes. حريص
similar	When two things are **similar**, they might look the same or do the same things. متشابه
real	If something is **real**, it happens and is true. حقيقي

Proverbs أقوال مأثورة

- A proverb is a well-known phrase about something which is generally true.
القول المأثور هو عبارة مشهورة حول شيء يكون صحيحا بشكل عام.
- A proverb has another meaning as well as its exact meaning.
القول المأثور له معنى آخر علاوة على معناه الفعلي.

Study the following proverbs

1. "The early bird catches the worm".
الطائر الذي يبحث عن طعامه مبكرًا يحصل عليه. "البركة في البكور."
2. "Birds of a feather flock together".
الطيور ذات الريش المتشابه تتجمع سويًا. "الطيور على أشكالها تقع."
3. "Don't count your chickens before they hatch".
لا تحكم على شئ بأنه جيد قبل حدوثه. "لا تعد فراخك قبل أن تفقس من البيض."
4. "The bird who dares to fall is the bird who learns to fly".
الطائر الذي يجرؤ على مواجهة الأخطار هو من يتعلم الطيران. "من جَدّ وَجَدَ ومن زرع حصد."
5. "Even an eagle will not fly higher than the sun".
حتى النسر لا يمكنه الطيران أعلى من الشمس. "العين لا تعلو على الحاجب."
6. "Singing birds don't build nests".
الطيور المغردة لا تبني أعشاشًا. "الأعمال أعلى صوتًا من الأقوال."
7. "It is not only fine feathers which make fine birds".
ليس الريش الناعم فقط هو من يصنع الطيور الجيدة. "المظاهر خداعة / لا تحكم على الناس بالمظاهر."

Help your child identify these words.
اعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Lesson (1)

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

Malak : Injy, what does this proverb mean? "The early bird catches the worm."

إنجي، ماذا يعني هذا المثل؟ "الطائر الذي جاء مبكرا يلتقط الدودة."

Injy : Well, proverbs have more than one meaning. This proverb tells us that a bird that is early, or the first to try to catch a worm, usually catches it. So, it also means that to be **successful**, you need to be the first to do something.

حسنًا، الأمثال لها أكثر من معنى. يخبرنا هذا المثل أن الطائر الذي يكون مبكرًا، أو أول من يحاول اصطياد الدودة، عادة ما يصطادها. لذلك، فهذا يعني أيضًا أن تكون ناجحًا يجب أن تكون الأول في فعل هذا الشيء.

Malak : How about this one? "Birds of a feather flock together".

وماذا عن هذا المثل؟ "الطيور ذات الريش المتشابه تتجمع سويًا".

Injy : If they flock together, that means they stay in a large group. And maybe it mentions feathers because they all have similar feathers.

إذا تجمعوا معًا، فهذا يعني أنهم يبقون في مجموعة كبيرة. وربما يذكر الريش لأن جميعها لها ريش متشابه.

Malak : You mean they all look the same?

هل تقصد أنهم جميعا يبدون نفس الشيء؟

Injy : Yes. But here, it means that similar people like doing the same things.

نعم. ولكن هنا يعني أن الأشخاص المتشابهين يحبون القيام بنفس الأشياء.

Malak : Okay, here's a strange one! "Don't count your chickens before they hatch."

حسنا، هذا مثل غريب! "لا تعدوا فراخكم قبل أن تفقس من البيض."

Injy : Well, you might have four eggs in a nest, but you don't really know how many will become chickens. So maybe it's about being **careful** before you know something will happen.

حسنًا، قد يكون لديك أربع بيضات في العش، لكنك لا تعرف حقًا عدد الفراخ التي ستصبح دجاجًا. لذلك ربما يتعلق الأمر بالحذر قبل أن تعرف أن شيئًا ما سيحدث.

Malak : So you don't make too many plans before something is **real**. That's **sensible**. How about this proverb? "The bird who dares to fall is the bird who learns to fly." Do you think that means you have to try something that seems scary if you want to succeed?

لذلك لا تضع الكثير من الخطط قبل أن يصبح الأمر حقيقيًا. هذا معقول. ماذا عن هذا المثل؟ "الطائر الذي يجرؤ على السقوط هو الطائر الذي يتعلم الطيران." هل تعتقد أن هذا يعني أنه عليك تجربة شيء يبدو مخيفًا إذا كنت تريد النجاح؟

Injy : Yes, I do. Well done, Malak! You're getting the idea!

نعم. أحسنتِ يا مَلَك! لقد فهمتِ الفكرة!

General Activities

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The early .... catches the wo
   a) bird b) animal c) bee d) falcon
2. Proverbs have more than .... meaning
   a) four b) three c) two d) one
3. The proverb also means that to be ....
   a) noisy b) lazy c) successful d) careless
4. To be successful, you need to be the .... to do somethi
   a) first b) second c) third d) fourth

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Birds of a feather .... togeth
   a) run b) flock c) talk d) swim
2. Don't count your chickens before they ....
   a) eat b) drink c) watch d) hatch
3. The early bird .... the wo
   a) sells b) buys c) makes d) catches
4. Even an eagle will not fly higher than the ....
   a) sun b) tree c) flower d) plant
5. Singing birds don't build ....
   a) castles b) nests c) houses d) clubs
6. If something is .... , it is a good idea that someone h thought about carefully.
   a) sensible b) bad c) dangerous d) busy

Help your child deal with such questions.

طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

7. Someone who is .... tries to do something, and does it.

   a) **excited** b) **dangerous** c) **real** d) **successful**

8. A .... person tries hard not to make mistakes.

   a) **careless** b) **careful** c) **sad** d) **well-known**

9. When two things are .... , they might look the same or do the same things.

   a) **different** b) **fast** c) **similar** d) **slow**

10. If something is .... , it happens and is true.

   a) **real** b) **unreal** c) **false** d) **wrong**

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

look - different - feathers - group - similar

"Birds of feather flock together". That means they stay in a large 1) .... And maybe it mentions 2) .... because they all have 3) .... feathers. So they all 4) .... the same.

4 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

1. might - eggs - You - four - have - nest - a - in - .

   ....

2. have - one - Proverbs - than - meaning - more - .

   ....

3. together - Birds - a feather - of - flock - .

   ....

4. bird - early - The - catches - worm - the - .

   ....

5 Punctuate the following.

- how about this one

  ....

Lesson (2) ECO-TOURISM IN EGYPT

Vocabulary

كلمات أساسية

eco-tourism	السياحة البيئية	sustainable	مستدام (ملائم للبيئة)
ideal	مثالي	respect	يحترم
simple accommodation	وسائل إقامة بسيطة	camp	يقيم معسكر / يخيم - يعسكر
coral reefs	الشعاب المرجانية	protected area	منطقة محمية

Activities

أنشطة

hiking	التنزه سيرًا على الأقدام	snorkeling	الغطس بأنبوب تنفس
watching movies	مشاهدة الأفلام	taking photos	التقاط الصور
going to restaurants	الذهاب إلى المطاعم	watching animals	مشاهدة الحيوانات
visiting beaches	زيارة الشواطئ	cooking outdoors	الطهي بالخارج
traveling on a river	التنقل عبر النهر	taking photos underwater	التقاط الصور تحت الماء
bird watching	مشاهدة الطيور	watching wildlife	مشاهدة الحياة البرية

Places

أماكن

North Africa	شمال أفريقيا	Asia	آسيا
Siwa Oasis	واحة سيوة	Europe	أوروبا

Extra vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

amazing	مذهل	journey	رحلة	lizards	سحالي
historical	تاريخي	species	فصائل / أنواع	turtles	سلاحف بحرية
stores	محلات	habitat	موطن / بيئة	crocodiles	تماسيح
guidebook	دليل سياحي	perfect	مثالي	tent	خيمة
mountains	جبال	excellent	ممتاز	tour	جولة
traditional	تقليدي	modern	حديث	trip	رحلة قصيرة
nature	الطبيعة	environment	البيئة	quiet	هادئ
pollution	تلوث	trash	قمامة	vacation	إجازة

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Lesson (2)

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past	P.P
protect	يحمي	protected	protected
cause	يسبب	caused	caused
sail	يبحر	sailed	sailed
fly	يطير	flew	flown
hurt	يؤذى	hurt	hurt

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

warmer weather	طقس أكثر دفئًا	close to	قريب من
very long distance	مسافة طويلة جدًا	fly away	يطير بعيدًا
migrating water birds	هجرة الطيور المائية	at certain times	في أوقات محددة
from a safe distance	من مسافة آمنة	the sun went down	غربت الشمس
set off	ينطلق / يبدأ رحلة	under the stars	تحت النجوم (في الهواء الطلق)
bright-colored fish	أسماك ذات ألوان زاهية	a busy day	يوم حافل
underwater photography			التصوير الفوتوغرافي تحت الماء

Definitions تعريفات

sustainable	do something in a way that doesn't damage the environment.	مستدام / ملائم للبيئة
accommodation	living in a place where you have what you need, and nothing more.	سكن / أماكن أقامة
respect	like something and want to look after it.	يحترم
ideal	perfect or excellent	مثالي

Note: A guidebook gives tourists information about a place.
الدليل السياحي يعطى السياح معلومات عن مكان.



Activities and places أنشطة وأماكن

Activities		Places	
Snorkeling	الغطس بأنبوب تنفس وقناع	the Red Sea	البحر الأحمر
Safari	رحلات السفاري	the desert	الصحراء
Sailing	الإبحار	the Nile	النيل
Bird-watching	مشاهدة الطيور	Siwa Oasis	واحة سيوة

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.



Egypt is an amazing country. There are many historical places to visit, as well as stores, markets, and museums. People can go snorkeling in the Red Sea, go on a desert safari, climb mountains, or sail on the Nile. So, tourism is important – but eco-tourism is becoming very popular, too.

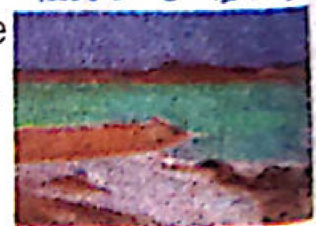
بلد رائعة. هناك العديد من الأماكن التاريخية للزيارة، وكذلك المتاجر والأسواق والمتاحف. يمكن للناس أن يذهبوا للغطس في حر الأحمر، أو الذهاب في رحلة سفاري صحراوية، أو تسلق الجبال، أو الإبحار في النيل. لذا، فإن السياحة مهمة - لكن السياحة البيئية حت تحظى بشعبية كبيرة أيضًا.

Eco-tourism is a way of traveling that doesn't damage the environment. It's more **sustainable** than traditional tourism, and it is designed to protect nature. People stay in **simple accommodation**, not large hotels, and they mustn't travel in ways that cause lots of pollution.

سياحة البيئية هي وسيلة سفر لا تضر بالبيئة. إنها أكثر استدامة وملائمة من السياحة التقليدية، وهي مصممة لحماية الطبيعة. يقيم س في أماكن إقامة بسيطة، وليس في فنادق كبيرة، ويجب ألا يسافروا بطرق تسبب الكثير من التلوث.

Many people are starting to visit Egypt for wildlife and bird-watching. There are lots of interesting birds to see here. Many kinds of birds migrate – they must fly to different countries at certain times of year, to find food, make nests, or have warmer weather. The birds often must fly very long distances, and lots of their journeys go over Egypt, because it is in North Africa and close to Asia and Europe.

الكثير من الناس بزيارة مصر لمشاهدة الحياة البرية والطيور. هناك الكثير من الطيور المثيرة للاهتمام التي يمكنك رؤيتها هنا. أنواع كثيرة من الطيور تهاجر - يجب عليهم التنقل إلى بلدان مختلفة في أوقات معينة من السنة، للعثور على الطعام، أو بناء أعشاش، أو التمتع بطقس أكثر دفئًا. وفي كثير من الأحيان يجب أن تطير الطيور لمسافات طويلة جدًا، وكثير من رحلاتها تمر فوق مصر، لأنها تقع في شمال أفريقيا وقريبة من آسيا وأوروبا.



There are over 450 species of birds in Egypt, and people come from all over the world on vacations to see them. For example, Siwa Oasis is a fantastic place to see many migrating water birds. It is an important habitat and people must protect it.

يوجد في مصر أكثر من ٤٥٠ نوعاً من الطيور، ويأتي الناس من جميع أنحاء العالم في إجازات لرؤيتها. على سبيل المثال، واحة سيوة مكان رائع لرؤية العديد من الطيور المائية المهاجرة. إنه موطن مهم ويجب على الناس حمايته.

People who go bird watching in Egypt will have a lot to see. They mustn't get too close to the birds, because they might fly away, but they can watch from a safe distance and take lots of photographs!

الأشخاص الذين يذهبون لمشاهدة الطيور في مصر سيكون لديهم الكثير لرؤيته. ويجب ألا أن يقتربوا كثيرًا من الطيور، لأنهم قد يطيرون بعيدًا، لكن يمكنهم المشاهدة من مسافة آمنة والتقاط الكثير من الصور!

Wildlife watching is **ideal** for people who **respect** nature, and eco-tourism is a good way for people to do this.

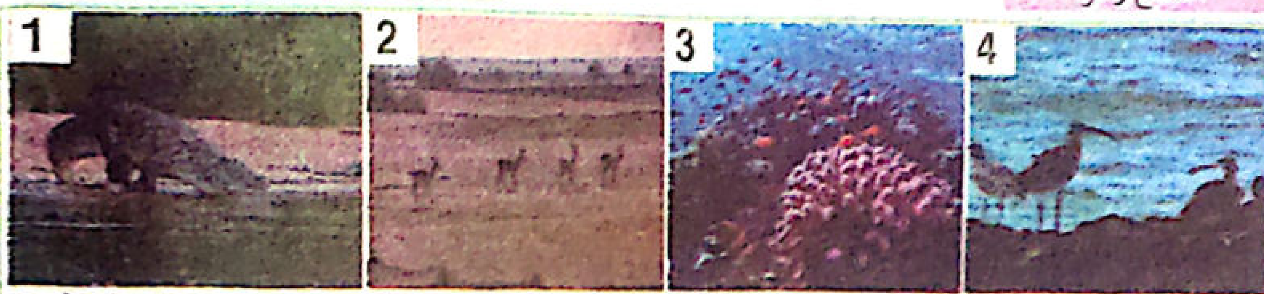
تعتبر مشاهدة الحياة البرية مثالية للأشخاص الذين يحترمون الطبيعة، وتعد السياحة البيئية وسيلة جيدة للأشخاص للقيام بذلك.

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.



1- On the river: Hi, I'm Nadia. Next month, we're going on a tour to see the birds and animals which live near the water. We'll travel along the river in small boats, and camp in tents at night. We'll bring our cameras, because we'll see some amazing things. We hope to see lizards and turtles, as well as lots of interesting plants. However, we mustn't swim because there might be crocodiles!

مرحبًا، أنا نادية. في الشهر القادم، سنقوم بجولة لرؤية الطيور والحيوانات التي تعيش بالقرب من الماء. سنسافر بطول النهر في قوارب صغيرة، والتخييم في الخيام ليلاً. سنحضر كاميراتنا، لأننا سنرى بعض الأشياء المذهلة. نأمل أن نرى السحالي والسلاحف، بالإضافة إلى الكثير من النباتات المثيرة للاهتمام. ومع ذلك، يجب ألا نسبح لأنه قد يكون هناك تماسيح!

2- Desert sunsets: Hi, I'm Adam. I love visiting this place with my family. We went last year, and in the evenings, we saw lots of wildlife when the sun went down - more animals live on the sand than you might think. This year we'll stay outside and cook meals under the stars, so we must bring a tent. Then we'll walk in small groups to see the wildlife around us.

مرحبًا، أنا آدم. أحب زيارة هذا المكان مع عائلتي. لقد ذهبنا العام الماضي، وفي المساء، شاهدنا الكثير من الحياة البرية عندما غربت الشمس - يعيش عدد أكبر من الحيوانات على الرمال أكثر مما قد تعتقد. هذا العام سنبقى في الخارج ونطبخ وجبات الطعام تحت النجوم (في الهواء الطلق)، لذلك يجب علينا إحضار خيمة. ثم سنسير في مجموعات صغيرة لرؤية الحياة البرية من حولنا.

3- Snorkel safari: Hi, I'm Lara. We're going to have the chance to do some underwater photography on our vacation! We'll set off on a tour from the beach in small boats, and sail out to places where we can see many different kinds of fish. There are beautiful, bright-colored fish there, as well as coral reefs. The tour is only on Monday and Wednesday because this is a protected area, so there mustn't be too many trips.

مرحبًا، أنا لارا. سيكون لدينا فرصة للقيام ببعض التصوير تحت الماء في إجازتنا! سننطلق في جولة من الشاطئ بالقوارب الصغيرة، والإبحار إلى الأماكن حيث يمكننا رؤية العديد من أنواع الأسماك المختلفة. هناك أيضًا أسماك جميلة ذات ألوان زاهية وكذلك الشعاب المرجانية. الجولة فقط يومي الاثنين والأربعاء لأن هذه منطقة محمية، لذا يجب ألا أن يكون هناك الكثير من الرحلات.

4- Birds at sea: Hi, I'm Fares. Next week, we're going on a tour to see some beautiful birds. We'll visit quiet beaches on a small bus, to see how many different kinds we can see. The sea in this area is a very popular place for birds to find food, so it will be a busy day. We're definitely going to bring our cameras! We must bring our own lunches too, as there are no shops there.

مرحباً، أنا فارس. في الأسبوع القادم، سنذهب في جولة لنرى بعض الطيور الجميلة. سنقوم بزيارة الشواطئ الهادئة في حافلة صغيرة، لنرى الأنواع المختلفة التي يمكننا رؤيتها. يعد البحر في هذه المنطقة مكانًا محبوبًا جدًا للطيور للعثور على الطعام، لذلك سيكون يوما حافلا. نحن ذاهبون بالتأكيد لجلب الكاميرات! يجب علينا إحضار وجبات الغداء الخاصة بنا أيضًا، لأنه لا يوجد متاجر هناك.

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.



(must / mustn't) يجب أن / يجب ألا

Form التكوين

Subject + must / mustn't + inf. (مصدر الفعل)

e.g. We must respect nature.

We mustn't leave trash in the desert.

Usage الاستخدام

- **We use "must" when we talk about something that we have to do or that is important to do.**

نستخدم "must" عند الحديث عن شيء يجب أن نقوم به أو من المهم أن نقوم به.

e.g. We must bring a tent.

- **We use "mustn't" when we are not allowed to do something.**

نستخدم "mustn't" عندما يكون غير مسموح لنا القيام بشيء ما.

e.g. We mustn't swim because there might be crocodiles!

Study the following.



We'll travel to the oasis to see the water birds.

سنسافر إلى الواحة لرؤية الطيور المائية.



You mustn't scare the birds. You must study them quietly from a safe place.

يجب ألا تخيفي الطيور. يجب عليك دراستها بهدوء من مكان آمن.

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets

1. You .... (mustn't) respect nature
2. You mustn't .... (scares) birds or animals
3. You .... (must) leave trash in the desert
4. You must .... (is) careful in the natural environment
5. You .... (mustn't) walk to school today because there are no buses.
6. You .... (must) walk in the desert when it's hot
7. You must .... (studies) hard
8. Students .... (mustn't) follow the school rules
9. You .... (must) throw trash on the beach
10. We .... (mustn't) drink much water. It's healthy

Help your child use must / mustn't.

ساعد طفلك أن يستخدم must / mustn't.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I love visiting the desert with my ....
   a) family b) friends c) neighbors d) classmates
2. We saw lots of wildlife when the .... went down.
   a) moon b) sun c) star d) earth
3. More .... live on the sand than you might think.
   a) insects b) birds c) animals d) plants
4. This year we'll stay outside and .... meals under the stars.
   a) buy b) sell c) bake d) cook

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Eco-tourism is more .... than traditional tourism.
   a) dangerous b) normal c) sustainable d) local
2. In eco-tourism people stay in simple.. .
   a) accommodation b) pollution c) vacation d) mountain
3. Wildlife watching is ideal for people who .... nature.
   a) hate b) respect c) damage d) destroy
4. We go .... under water.
   a) hiking b) sleeping c) migrating d) snorkeling
5. She likes .... photos.
   a) taking b) walking c) going d) talking
6. On eco-tourism vacations, you see .... and animals.
   a) big cities b) nature c) hotels d) movies
7. On eco-tourism vacations you stay in .... places.
   a) big b) modern c) short d) simple
8. On eco-tourism vacations, people think about ....
   a) the environment b) shopping c) cooking d) running
9. On eco-tourism vacations, the most important thing is not to .... nature.
   a) see b) protect c) respect d) hurt
10. You can .... mountains or sail on the Nile.
   a) go b) climb c) damage d) travel

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

much - birds - beaches - many - busy

Next week, we're going on a tour to see some beautiful birds. We visit quiet 1) .... on a small bus, to see how 2) .... different kinds we can see. The sea in this area is very popular place for 3) .... to find food, so it will be a 4) .... day.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Egypt is an amazing country. There are many historical places to visit, as well as stores, markets, and museums. People can go snorkeling in the Red Sea, go on a desert safari, climb mountains, or sail on the Nile. So, tourism is important – but eco-tourism is becoming very popular, too. Eco-tourism is a way of traveling that doesn't damage the environment. It's more sustainable than traditional tourism, and it is designed to protect nature. People stay in simple accommodation, not large hotels, and they mustn't travel in ways that cause lots of pollution.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The main idea of the text is ....
   a) accommodation b) museums c) markets d) deserts
2. People can go snorkeling in the ....
   a) Red Sea b) Lake c) River d) Pool
3. Eco-tourism is becoming very ....
   a) unknown b) dangerous c) busy d) popular

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What is eco-tourism?

....

5. Summarize the text in one sentence.

....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد ابنك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (2)

5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

1. is - ideal - Wildlife - watching - people - for - respect - who - nature - .

....

2. study - birds - from - You - must - place - a safe - .

....

3. going - We - on - are - month - a tour - next - .

....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. You mustn't .... (swimming) because there might be crocodiles.
2. You .... (must) drop trash on the beach.
3. When we go camping, we .... (mustn't) take a tent.
4. You .... (must) throw litter in the park.
5. You .... (must) scare the birds.
6. Many kinds of birds migrate. They .... (mustn't) fly to different countries.
7. In the zoo, people .... (must) get too close to animals.

7 Punctuate the following.

- you mustn't scare the birds

....

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Eco-tourism in Egypt

Guiding elements:

(sustainable - simple accommodation)

....

....

....



Lesson (3) Part (A) THE BENEFITS OF ECO-TOURIS

Vocabulary

traditional	تقليدي	presentation	قديمي
eco-tourist	سائح بيئي	damage	ضرر
hotel	فندق	score	
campsite	مخيم	thirsty	
deadline	موعد نهائي	points	
cycling	ركوب الدراجات	snack	خفيفة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
cause	يسبب	caused	caused
create	يبتكر	created	created
miss	يفتقد / يفوته	missed	missed
explore	يستكشف	explored	explored

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
feel	يشعر	felt	felt
drink	يشرب	drank	drunk

Important expressions and prepositions وحروف جر هامة

by bus	بالأتوبيس	for two hours	اعتين
outdoor hotel	فندق بالخارج	take care	- يعتني
do activities	يقوم بأنشطة	eco-friendly accommodation	قامة صديقة للبيئة
local people	السكان المحليون	keen to	ن أن ...
do sports	يمارس رياضة	go sightseeing	المعالم

Help your child identify these words.
أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Lesson (3)

Do the quiz. How much of an eco-tourist are you?

1. I like to travel...
a) by boat
b) by car
c) by bicycle

2. I like to stay...
a) in a small, outdoor hotel room
b) on a campsite
c) in a big hotel

3. On vacation, I like to...
a) go sightseeing
b) do sports and activities
c) read a book

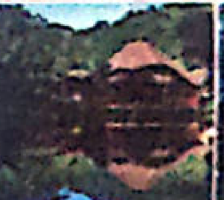
4. I think eco-tourism is...
a) a bit boring
b) interesting and fun
c) hard work but a good idea

5. I think it's important that tourism...
a) provides jobs for local people
b) gives tourists the vacations they want
c) looks after the environment

6. I like being in nature because...
a) it's quiet and relaxing
b) I can watch wildlife
c) the views are good

Check your answers! What's your score?

1. a 2; b 1; c 3
2. a 2; b 3; c 1
3. a 2; b 3; c 1
4. a 1; b 3; c 2
5. a 2; b 1; c 3
6. a 2; b 3; c 1




Score 1- 6 points: You prefer **traditional** vacations, but you can still be an eco-tourist by helping the environment while you're away. For example, try to walk or travel by bus and train, and recycle your trash whenever possible.

النتيجة من ١ إلى ٦ نقاط: أنت تفضل الإجازات التقليدية، ولكن لا يزال بإمكانك أن تكون سائحًا بيئيًا من خلال مساعدة البيئة أثناء وجودك فيها. على سبيل المثال، حاول المشي أو السفر بالحافلة والقطار، وقم بإعادة تدوير القمامة كلما أمكن ذلك.

Score 7 – 12 points: You want to take care of the environment and support local communities, so you are keen to learn more about eco-tourism. Next time you go on vacation, try out some eco-tourist activities like wildlife watching, cycling, or snorkeling.

النتيجة من ٧ إلى ١٢ نقطة: أنت تريد الاهتمام بالبيئة ودعم المجتمعات المحلية، لذلك أنت حريص على معرفة المزيد عن السياحة البيئية. في المرة القادمة التي تذهب فيها في إجازة، جرب بعض أنشطة السياحة البيئية مثل مشاهدة الحياة البرية أو ركوب الدراجات أو الغطس.

Score 13 – 18 points: You're a great eco-tourist! You like to explore new ways of traveling and do activities that don't damage the environment. Good for you!

النتيجة من ١٣ إلى ١٨ نقطة: أنت سائح بيئي عظيم! تحب استكشاف طرق جديدة للسفر والقيام بأنشطة لا تضر بالبيئة. أتمنى لك الخير!

Help your child do the quiz.

ساعد طفلك أن يقوم بحل الاختبار.



(If) First Conditional "إذا / لو" الحالة الشرطية الأولى

Form التكوين

If + subject + present simple , subject + (will + inf.) ...

e.g. If people learn more about the environment, they will want to protec

Subject + will + inf. + if + present simple

e.g. I will buy a car if I have a lot of money.

Usage الاستخدام

- We use the first conditional to talk about things that are likely to happ in the future. دم الحالة الشرطية الأولى للتحدث عن أشياء محتمل حدوثها في المستقبل.

e.g. If tourists stay in simple accommodation, there won't be so many big hotels.



Note: will = 'll will not = won't

e.g. If I am hungry, I'll eat a snack.
If he doesn't leave now, he won't catch the bus.

- Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brack

1. If I .... (has) an exam, I'll study f
2. If you go to bed late, you .... (get) up
3. If Omar .... (play) football for two hours, he'll be t
4. If she feels thirsty, she .... (drink) some w
5. If we .... (not work) together, we'll miss the deac
6. If I .... (be) hungry, I'll eat a sn
7. He .... (catch) the bus if he goes to the station e
8. If he .... (be) free, he'll visi
9. She'll buy a new phone if she .... (have) a lot of mo
10. He .... (not visit) us if he is b
11. If she .... (got) up early, she'll catch the
12. If you study hard, you'll .... (passing) the ex

Help your child use the first conditional.
ك أن يستخدم الحالة الشرطية الأولى.

Lesson (3) Part (B) CLIL: SCIENCE BIRD MIGRATION

Key vocabulary
كلمات أساسية



kingfisher
طائر الرفراف


pelican
بجعة


swift
طائر السنونو / السمامة


eagle
نسر

Extra vocabulary
كلمات إضافية

migrate	يهاجر	flamingo	طائر الفلامنجو	Fayoum	الفيوم
northern	شمالي	across	عَبْر	distances	مسافات
winter	شتاء	journey	رحلة طويلة	oasis /oases	واحة / واحات
stars	نجوم	scientists	علماء	continent	قارة

Conjugation of verbs
تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past	P.P
seem	يبدوا	seemed	seemed
leave	يغادر	left	left
eat	يأكل	ate	eaten
find out	يكتشف	found out	found out
spend	يقضي وقتًا	spent	spent

Important expressions and prepositions
تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

European countries	دول أوروبية	warmer places	أماكن أكثر دفئًا
on the way	على الطريق	The Red Sea	البحر الأحمر
such as	مثل	Lake Qarun	بحيرة قارون
flocks of birds	أسراب من الطيور	Mediterranean Coasts	سواحل البحر المتوسط

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

A long journey



Many birds migrate to and from Egypt, and across it, because of where it is in the world. North Africa is hotter than Europe, so in winter, many birds leave northern European countries and fly to Egypt and other warmer places. This means that lots of interesting birds migrate to Egypt, such as eagles, falcons, and swifts.

تهاجر العديد من الطيور من وإلى مصر، وعبرها، بسبب مكانها في العالم. شمال أفريقيا أكثر حرارة من أوروبا، لذلك في فصل الشتاء، تغادر العديد من الطيور بلدان شمال أوروبا وتطير إلى مصر وغيرها من الأماكن الأكثر دفئا. وهذا يعني أن الكثير من الطيور المثيرة للاهتمام تهاجر إلى مصر، مثل النسور والصقور وطيور السمامة.

Many water birds migrate to Egypt, too. You can often see large flocks of birds such as pelicans near water, along the Red Sea and Mediterranean coasts, as well as on the Nile. These birds often eat fish or plants that live in rivers, lakes, oases, and seas. Lake Qarun in Fayoum is a good place to see flamingos.

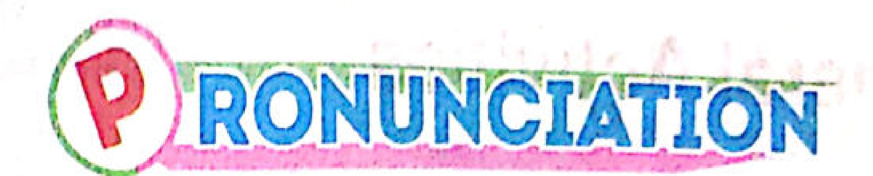
تهاجر العديد من الطيور المائية إلى مصر أيضًا. يمكنك في كثير من الأحيان رؤية أسراب كبيرة من الطيور مثل البجع بالقرب من المياه، على طول سواحل البحر الأحمر والبحر الأبيض المتوسط، وكذلك على نهر النيل. غالبًا ما تأكل هذه الطيور الأسماك أو النباتات التي تعيش في الأنهار والبحيرات والواحات والبحار. تعد بحيرة قارون بالفيوم مكانًا جيدًا لمشاهدة طيور الفلامنجو.

Some birds fly very long distances, making the same journey year after year. Even young birds that migrate for the first time seem to know how to get to the place they need to be. How do these birds know where to go? They might use the sun, the stars, or the things they can see on the way. Scientists have spent a long time trying to find out how they do this!

تطير بعض الطيور لمسافات طويلة جدًا، وتقوم بنفس الرحلة سنة بعد سنة. حتى الطيور الصغيرة التي تهاجر لأول مرة يبدو أنها تعرف كيفية الوصول إلى المكان الذي تحتاج إليه. كيف تعرف هذه الطيور إلى أين تذهب؟ قد يستخدمون الشمس أو النجوم أو الأشياء التي يمكنهم رؤيتها في الطريق. لقد أمضى العلماء وقتًا طويلاً في محاولة معرفة كيفية القيام بذلك!

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.



A syllable المقطع

It is a part of a word that contains a single vowel sound.

المقطع اللفظي هو جزء من كلمة ما يحتوي على صوت متحرك واحد.

Stress: The way in which a part of a word is emphasized more than the other parts while speaking.

النبرة أو الشدة: الطريقة التي يتم بها التأكيد على نطق جزء من الكلمة أكثر من الأجزاء الأخرى أثناء التحدث.

- Most two syllable words have the stress on the first syllable.

معظم الكلمات ذات المقطعين يكون المقطع الأول مشددًا.

weather - careful

- Three syllable words can have the stress on the **first** or the **second** syllable.

الكلمات ذات الثلاثة مقاطع من الممكن أن يكون التشديد على المقطع الأول أو الثاني.

successful - snorkeling - tourism - important

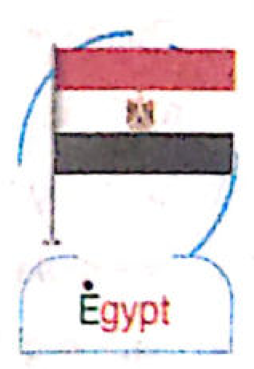
Two syllables



falcon



eagle



Egypt

Three syllables



flamingo



pelican



kingfisher

General Activities

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Some birds fly very .... distances, making the same journey
   a) long b) short c) small d) new
2. Even .... birds know how to get to the place they need to be
   a) old b) young c) modern d) little
3. Birds might use the .... or the stars to know where to go
   a) planet b) moon c) sun d) son
4. .... have spent a long time trying to find out how the birds do this
   a) Teachers b) Doctors c) Scientists d) Footballers

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Many birds migrate to find .... weather in winter
   a) bad b) colder c) warmer d) snowy
2. There are often large .... of water birds near lakes and oases
   a) flocks b) rocks c) clocks d) socks
3. Migrating birds fly very .... distances
   a) simple b) short c) long d) tiny
4. Birds might use the sun or the .... to find out where to go
   a) earth b) stars c) ground d) floor
5. Lots of birds migrate to Egypt, such as eagles and ....
   a) monkeys b) elephants c) lions d) swifts
6. Many birds .... to and from Egypt every year
   a) sleep b) migrate c) eat d) hatches

Help your child deal with such questions.
...طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

Qarun - fish - flocks - rivers - hurt

Many water birds migrate to Egypt. You can see large 1) .... of birds such as pelicans near water. These birds eat 2) .... or plants that live in the 3) ...., lakes, oases and seas. Lake 4) .... in Fayoum is a good place to see flamingos.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Many birds migrate to and from Egypt, and across it, because of where it is in the world. North Africa is hotter than Europe, so in winter, many birds leave northern European countries and fly to Egypt and other warmer places. This means that lots of interesting birds migrate to Egypt, such as eagles, falcons, and swifts. Many water birds migrate to Egypt, too. You can often see large flocks of birds such as pelicans near water, along the Red Sea and Mediterranean coasts, as well as on the Nile. These birds often eat fish or plants that live in rivers, lakes, oases, and seas. Lake Qarun in Fayoum is a good place to see flamingos.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to ....
   a) Egypt b) Africa c) Europe d) Fayoum
2. Europe is .... than North Africa.
   a) colder b) cooler c) hotter d) wetter
3. You can see flamingos in ....
   a) Aswan b) Fayoum c) Luxor d) Giza

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What do often birds eat?

....

5. What's the main idea of the passage?

....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

1. in - snorkeling - We - go - hot - weather - .

....

2. fly - very - birds - Some - distances - long - .

....

3. important - Tourism - Egypt - very - is - in - .

....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. If she .... (feel) hungry, she'll have a snack.
2. If you don't sleep early, you .... (get) up early.
3. If tourists .... (takes) care of the places they visit, they will cause less damage to the environment.
4. If people learn more about the environment, they .... (want) to protect it.
5. If tourists stay in simple, eco-friendly accommodation, there ...... (not be) so many big hotels.
6. If eco-tourism .... (be) successful, it will create new jobs for the local people.

7 Punctuate the following.

- what do migrating birds eat

....

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Bird migration

Guiding elements:

(migrate - North Africa - warmer)

....

....

....

Lessons (4 & 5) WRITING: A BLOG PROJECT

Vocabulary الكلمات

blog	مدونة	problem	مشكلة	area	منطقة
important	هام	snorkel	يغطس بأنبوب تنفس وقناع	sharks	أسماك القرش
healthy	صحي	scuba dive	يغوص تحت الماء	safe	آمن
rivers	أنهار	floods	فيضانات	fires	حرائق
insects	حشرات	planet	كوكب	drought	جفاف

Animal Habitats مواطن وبيئات الحيوانات

forests	الغابات	the mountains	الجبال	the rivers	الأنهار
the desert	الصحراء	the seas	البحار		



Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

for example	على سبيل المثال	cut down trees	يقطع الأشجار
good for	مفيد لـ	clean up	ينظف
famous for	مشهور بـ	many types of	أنواع عديدة من
great for	رائع لـ	garden box	حوض زراعة النباتات
look after	يعتني بـ	a lot of space	مساحة كبيرة
make sure	يتأكد	all over the world	في جميع أنحاء العالم
waste water	يهدر المياه	Sinai Peninsula	شبه جزيرة سيناء
recycle paper	يعيد تدوير الورق	The Ras Mohammed National Park	محمية رأس محمد الوطنية

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
waste	يهدر - يبدد	wasted	wasted
protect	يحمي	protected	protected
plant	يزرع	planted	planted
recycle	يعيد تدوير	recycled	recycled
drop	يُسقط	dropped	dropped
try	يحاول	tried	tried

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

What's a habitat

Home Archive Contact Pages

Hello, I'm Arwa – welcome to my blog! I'm writing today about something which I think is really important.

مرحبًا، أنا أروى – مرحبًا بكم في مدونتي! أكتب اليوم عن شيء أعتقد أنه مهم جدًا.

I think we should all try to protect animal habitats. Animals need safe places to live, find food, and look after their babies. They are part of our planet, so we must make sure that the things we do don't hurt them.

أعتقد أنه ينبغي أن نحاول جميعًا حماية البيئات الحيوانية. تحتاج الحيوانات إلى أماكن آمنة للعيش فيها، والعثور على الطعام، ورعاية صغارها. إنهم جزء من كوكبنا، لذا يجب علينا التأكد من أن الأشياء التي نقوم بها لا تؤذيهم.

There are lots of different habitats in Egypt, such as the desert, sea, mountains, and rivers. It is good for everybody if we protect these habitats. For example, when a habitat is healthy, lots of animals can live in one place. With good eco-tourism, people can come on wildlife-watching holidays. This is good for the country, and good for the people, too. When people learn about wildlife, they want to protect it.

هناك الكثير من البيئات المختلفة في مصر، مثل الصحراء والبحر والجبال والأنهار. إنه أمر جيد للجميع إذا قمنا بحماية هذه البيئات. على سبيل المثال، عندما يكون الموطن صحيًا، يمكن للعديد من الحيوانات أن تعيش في مكان واحد. ومع السياحة البيئية الجيدة، يمكن للناس القدوم لقضاء إجازات لمشاهدة الحياة البرية. وهذا أمر جيد لبلدنا، وجيد للناس أيضًا. عندما يتعلم الناس عن الحياة البرية، فهم يريدون حمايتها.

We can all think about things we can do to protect habitats. For example, we mustn't waste water or drop litter. We can recycle paper, so people don't cut down trees. We can also plant flowers and plants, because these are great for birds and insects. You don't need a lot of space – here's a garden box I made for my window!



يمكننا جميعًا التفكير في الأشياء التي يمكننا القيام بها لحماية هذه البيئات. على سبيل المثال، يجب ألا نهدر الماء أو نلقي القمامة. يمكننا إعادة تدوير الورق، حتى لا يقطع الناس الأشجار. يمكننا أيضًا زراعة الزهور والنباتات، لأنها مفيدة للطيور والحشرات. أنت لا تحتاج إلى مساحة كبيرة - إليك حوض النباتات الذي صنعته لنافذتي!

Note: **A habitat is a place where an animal or plant lives.**

البيئة أو الموطن هو المكان الذي يعيش فيه الحيوان أو النبات.

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

Read and learn: Causes and effects

Causes أسباب	Effects تأثيرات (النتائج)
There are floods droughts or fires. يوجد فيضانات أوجفاف أوحرائق.	Animals habitats are damaged. يلحق الضرر بمواطن الحيوانات.
Animal habitats are damaged. إلحاق الضرر بمواطن الحيوانات.	Animals don't have safe places to live, find food, or look after babies. لا تجد الحيوانات أماكن آمنة للحياة ولا تجد طعام ولا تستطيع العناية بصغارها.
A habitat is safe and healthy. الموطن آمن وصحي.	Lots of animals can live there. يمكن للكثير من الحيوانات العيش فيه.
We recycle paper. نقوم بإعادة تدوير الورق.	Trees aren't cut down. لا يتم قطع الأشجار.
We grow plants and flowers. نقوم بزراعة النباتات والزهور.	Birds and insects have food. يمكن للطيور والحشرات إيجاد الطعام.

Study the following

and (و) تفيد العطف

We saw turtles, pelicans **and** lizards when we went wildlife watching.

but (لكن) تفيد التناقض

This was a beautiful river, **but** there is pollution in it now.

because (لأن) لبيان السبب

We wanted to clean up the beach **because** there was trash on it.

so (لذلك) لبيان النتيجة

We planted flowers **so** birds and insects can have more food.

When you write a blog about animal habitats, you write about:

عندما تكتب مدونة عن البيئات الحيوانية، يمكن أن تكتب عن:

- Which animals live there. أي الحيوانات تعيش في هذا الموطن.
- Which plants live there. أي النباتات تعيش في هذا الموطن.
- What problems this habitat has. ما هي المشاكل الموجودة بالموطن.
- How we can help it. كيف يمكننا مساعدة هذا الموطن.

كما يمكن أن نستخدم الروابط (and - but - so - because) لبيان الأسباب والتأثيرات و (must - mustn't) لبيان ما هو مهم.

Write a blog about the Nile habitat.

....



Read the leaflet.

اقرأ المنشور.

The Ras Mohammed National Park



The Ras Mohammed National Park on the Red Sea is a fantastic area for locals and tourists to visit. This beautiful area on the Sinai Peninsula is famous for its sea life, warm water, and amazing weather. People come from all over the world to snorkel and **scuba dive** here.

تعد محمية رأس محمد الوطنية على البحر الأحمر منطقة رائعة يمكن للسكان المحليين والسياح زيارتها. تشتهر هذه المنطقة الجميلة في شبه جزيرة سيناء بالحياة البحرية والمياه الدافئة والطقس المذهل. يأتي الناس من جميع أنحاء العالم للغطس والغوص هنا.

You can see coral reefs and lots of brightly colored fish, and maybe sharks. There is lots of other wildlife, too, and it is a great place for bird-watching.

يمكنك رؤية الشعاب المرجانية والكثير من الأسماك ذات الألوان الزاهية، وربما أسماك القرش. هناك الكثير من الحيوانات البرية الأخرى أيضًا، وهي مكان رائع لمشاهدة الطيور.

The National Park is protected, but people are allowed to visit. Because it is so beautiful, lots of visitors come and ride boats, or swim and snorkel in the sea.

الحديقة الوطنية محمية، ولكن يُسمح للناس بزيارتها. ولأنها جميلة جدًا، يأتي الكثير من الزوار ويركبون القوارب، أو يسبحون ويغطسون في البحر.

Creating a leaflet

عمل منشور أو كُتيب

- **When you write an information leaflet for visitors to a habitat, you can write about.**

  عند كتابة منشور إعلامي لزوار موطن ما، يمكنك الكتابة عن.

- **where it is and what wildlife you can see there.**

  مكان الموطن وأي حياة برية يمكنك أن تراها هناك.

- **why it is an important and interesting place.**

  لماذا هذا المكان هام وشيق.

- **add some pictures**

  أضف بعض الصور.

Create a leaflet about the Nile Delta.

....

....

....

....

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The Ras Mohammed National .... is on the Red Sea.
   a) Club b) Shop c) Store d) Park
2. It's a fantastic area for locals and .... to visit.
   a) scientists b) farmers c) tourists d) doctors
3. This beautiful area is on the .... Peninsula.
   a) Aswan b) Sinai c) Luxor d) Siwa
4. People come from all over the world to .... and scuba dive here.
   a) run b) play c) snorkel d) swim

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. We can plant flowers and plants to .... animal habitats.
   a) help b) waste c) damage d) hurt
2. Animals need safe places to find ....
   a) babies b) food c) air d) metal
3. In Egypt, there are .... types of habitat.
   a) many b) much c) one d) no
4. People can go on wildlife .... vacations.
   a) watching b) changing c) riding d) waiting

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

run - snorkel - watching - coral - fish

In the Ras Mohammed National Park you can see 1) .... reefs and lots of brightly colored 2) .... and maybe sharks. There is lots of other wildlife, too, and it is a great place for bird 3) .... The National Park is protected, but people are allowed to visit. Because it is so beautiful, lots of visitors come and ride boats, or swim and 4) .... in the sea.



4 Read the text and answer the questions.

I'm writing today about something which I think is really important. I thi we should all try to protect animal habitats. Animals need safe places to live, fir food, and look after their babies. They are part of our planet, so we must mak sure that the things we do, don't hurt **them**. There are lots of different habitats Egypt, such as the desert, sea, mountains, and rivers. It is good for everybody we protect these habitats. For example, when a habitat is healthy, lots of animals can live in one place. With good eco-tourism, people can come on wildlife watching holidays.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. We should all try to protect animal ....
   a) food   b) legs   c) habits   d) habitats
2. Animals need .... places to live ir
   a) safe   b) unsafe   c) small   d) close
3. When a habitat is ...., lots of animals can live in one place
   a) unhealthy   b) large   c) long   d) healthy

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What are the habitats in Egypt? ....
5. What does the underlined pronoun "them" refer to? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

1. drop - waste - We - mustn't - or - water - litter - .

....

2. coral - the - in - You - Sea - can - Red - see - reefs - .

....

6 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

A blog about the forest habitat

Guiding elements:

- which animals live there
- which plants live there
- what problems this habitat has
- how we can help it

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Writing Corner

A famous proverb

A proverb is a well-known phrase about something which is generally true. It has another meaning as well as its exact meaning. "The early bird catches the worm". This proverb tells us that a bird that is early, or the first to try to catch a worm, usually catches it. So, it also means that to be successful, you need to be the first to do something.

Eco-tourism in Egypt

Egypt is an amazing country. There are many historical places to visit, as well as stores, markets and museums. Eco-tourism is a way of traveling that doesn't damage the environment. It's more sustainable than traditional tourism. People stay in simple accommodation, not large hotels. They mustn't travel in ways that cause pollution. They can visit Egypt for bird and wildlife watching.

Bird migration

Many birds migrate to and from Egypt, and across it, because of where it is in the world. North Africa is hotter than Europe, so in winter, many birds leave northern European countries and fly to Egypt and other warmer places. This means that lots of interesting birds migrate to Egypt, such as eagles, falcons, and swifts.

A blog about animal habitats

Home Archive Contact Pages

Hello, I'm Sarah – welcome to my blog! I'm writing today about something which I think is really important. I think we should all try to protect animal habitats. Animals need safe places to live, find food, and look after their babies. They are part of our planet, so we must make sure that the things we do, don't hurt them or their habitats.

Review on Unit (10)

Vocabulary

successful	ناجح	camp	يم معسكر
similar	متشابه	coral reefs	عاب المرجانية
real	حقيقي	protected area	طقة محمية
sensible	عاقل / حكيم	tourists	ياح
eco-tourism	السياحة البيئية	damage	لف / يضر
sustainable	مستدام (ملائم للبيئة)	pelican	جعة
ideal	مثالي	kingfisher	ئر الرفراف
respect	يحترم	swift	ئر السنونو / السمامة
simple	بسيط	eagle	سر
accommodation	أماكن إقامة / سكن	migrate	هاجر
scuba dive	الغوص بأنبوب تنفس	close to	رب من
wildlife	الحياة البرية	desert	حراء
mountains	الجبال	forest	ابة
habitat	موطن - بيئة	space	ساحة فارغة

Activities

hiking	التنزه سيرًا على الأقدام	visiting beaches	ارة الشواطئ
snorkeling	الغطس بأنبوب التنفس	cooking outdoors	طهي بالخارج
watching movies	مشاهدة الأفلام	traveling on a river	تنقل عبر النهر
taking photos	التقاط الصور	taking photos underwater	تقاط الصور تحت الماء
going to restaurants	الذهاب للمطاعم	wildlife-watching	شاهدة الحياة البرية

Help your child revise unit (10).
عد طفلك أن يراجع الوحدة العاشرة.

Pronunciation

Two syllables	Three syllables
weather	flamingo
falcon	successful
careful	pelican

Grammar

Necessity الضرورة والإلزام

must + inf. المصدر يجب أن..

تستخدم للتعبير عن الضرورة لعمل شيء ما

e.g. You **must** protect the environment.

mustn't + inf. المصدر يجب ألا..

تستخدم للتعبير عن عدم السماح بعمل شيء

e.g. You **mustn't** smoke here.

(If) First Conditional "إذا / لو" الحالة الشرطية الأولى

Form التكوين

If + subject + present simple , subject + (will + inf.) ...

e.g. **If** people **learn** more about the environment, they **will want** to protect it.

Usage الاستخدام

- **We use the first conditional to talk about things that are likely to happen in the future.** تستخدم الحالة الشرطية الأولى للتحدث عن أشياء محتمل حدوثها في المستقبل.

e.g. **If** tourists **stay** in simple accommodation, there **won't be** so many big hotels.

Dictation on Unit (10)

Lesson (1)

بي	ناجح ....
ل / حكيم	متشابه ....
....	حريص ....

Lesson (2)

يط	السياحة البيئية ....
كن إقامة / سكن	مستدام - ملائم للبيئة ....
عي	مثالي ....
شعاب المرجانية	يحترم ....

Lesson (3)

اجر	بجعة ....
صقر	طائر الرفراف ....
طائر الفلامنجو	طائر السنونو / السمامة ....

Lessons (4 & 5)

موطن - بيئة	قريب من ....
شعاب مرجانية	الصحراء ....
صب	مدونة ....
ثير	الجبال ....
الغوص تحت الماء	الغابة ....

Help your child dictate these words.

ساعد طفلك في إملاء هذه الكلمات.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. We mustn't waste .... or drop litter.
   a) money b) water c) time d) energy
2. We can recycle.. .
   a) cans b) papyrus c) paper d) glass
3. We can also plant ....
   a) oranges b) tomatoes c) potatoes d) flowers
4. Plants and flowers are great for birds and ....
   a) insects b) cows c) monkeys d) lions

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. When people .... the environment, they want to protect it.
   a) trip b) respect c) damage d) hurt
2. Eco-tourism is more .... than vacations which don't care about the environment.
   a) sustainable b) dangerous c) expensive d) similar
3. Many birds .... to find warmer weather in Egypt.
   a) take b) respect c) migrate d) save
4. Things that are .... look the same or do the same things.
   a) different b) close c) remote d) similar

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

meat - Lake - Nile - birds - plants

Many water birds migrate to Egypt. You can often see large flocks of **1)** .... such as pelicans near water, along the Red Sea and Mediterranean coasts, as well as on the **2)** .... These birds often eat fish or **3)** .... that live in rivers, lakes, oases, and seas. **4)** .... Qarun in Fayoum is a good place to see flamingos.

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

The Ras Mohammed National Park on the Red Sea is a fantastic area for locals and tourists to visit. This beautiful area on the Sinai Peninsula is famous for its sea life, warm water, and amazing weather. People come from all over the world to snorkel and scuba dive here. You can see coral reefs and lots of brightly colored fish, and maybe sharks. There is lots of other wildlife, too, and it is a great place for bird-watching. The National Park is protected, but people are allowed to visit. Because it is so beautiful, lots of visitors come and ride boats, or swim and snorkel in the sea.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The Ras Mohammed National .... is on the Red Sea.
   a) **Park** b) **Club** c) **Oasis** d) **Wild**
2. You can see coral .... and lots of fish there.
   a) **roofs** b) **reefs** c) **birds** d) **stones**
3. People come to snorkel and .... dive there.
   a) **scape** b) **tour** c) **scuba** d) **ride**

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What is the Sinai Peninsula famous for? ....
5. What does the underlined word "its" refer to? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

1. we - protect - I - habitats - animal - should - think - .
   ....
2. fly - distances - long - Migrating - very - birds - .
   ....
3. leave - You - desert - the - in - trash - mustn't - .
   ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. We (mustn't) .... respect nature when we go wildlife-watching.
2. If she (learn) .... to bake, she'll save a lot of money.

7 Punctuate the following.

- you mustn t smoke in hospitals. ....

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about "Your favorite bird":

Guiding elements: - What's the bird's name?
- Where does it live? - What does it look like?

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Al-Azhar Corner

1 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

Where - long - ostrich - wild - bird

Sara : What's your favorite 1) ....?
Salma: It's the 2) ....
Sara : How 3) .... is it?
Salma: It's about 210 cm long.
Sara : 4) .... does it live?
Salma: It lives in the 5) ....

Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

England - places - welcome - come - Pyramids

Amir : Hi! 1) .... to Egypt.
John : Hi! Thank you.
Amir : Where do you 2) .... from?
John : I come from 3) ....
Amir : What 4) .... did you visit in Egypt?
John : I visited the 5) .... and the Sphinx.

2 Read and circle the odd one out and replace it.

1.	careful	successful	sensible	play	(........................)
2.	big	see	small	simple	(........................)
3.	read	red	white	blue	(........................)
4.	went	saw	took	study	(........................)
5.	and	but	play	so	(........................)

Read and circle the odd one out and replace it.

1.	desert	sea	mountain	eat	(........................)
2.	migrate	pelican	kingfisher	swift	(........................)
3.	watching	go	taking	hiking	(........................)
4.	make	grow	come	visited	(........................)
5.	habitat	happy	healthy	safe	(........................)

Unit 11

How can I help?

In this unit, the students will ...

- listen, read, research, and write about charity work and volunteering.
- use infinitives of purpose.
- read and understand three texts about mystery objects.
- listen to an interview about volunteering.
- use -ly and other adverbs.
- read and understand a story about two brothers.
- say words containing sh, ch, and tch.
- Write a biography of a volunteer.
- create a leaflet about being a good citizen.

Lesson 1 WHY DO YOU WANT TO HELP?

Key vocabulary
كلمات أساسية

donate	يتبرع	support	يدعم / يساند
participate	يشارك	volunteer	يتطوع

Extra vocabulary
كلمات إضافية

particular	خاص	organization	منظمة	habitat	موطن
project	مشروع	community help	مساعدة المجتمع	neighbor	جار
trash	قمامة	kindergarten	حضانة / الروضة	vacation	أجازة

Conjugation of verbs
تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past	P.P
train	يتدرب	trained	trained
donate	يتبرع	donated	donated
participate	يشارك	participated	participated
support	يساند / يدعم	supported	supported
volunteer	يتطوع	volunteered	volunteered
choose	يختار	chose	chosen
grow	يزرع	grew	grown

Important expressions and prepositions
تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

take part in	يشارك في	start up	يبدأ
give away	يتبرع	look forward to	يتطلع إلى
an after-school club	نادي بعد المدرسة	kind to	عطوف مع
a bit nervous	متوتر قليلًا	used to	اعتاد أن
at first	في بادئ الأمر	look after	يعتني بـ
get better	يتحسن	look for	يبحث عن
help out	يساعد في	live alone	يعيش بمفرده

Definitions
تعريفات

support	to do things that help a particular person or group	يساند / يدعم
participate	to take part in something	يشارك
volunteer	to do a job or activity and not take any money for it	يتطوع
donate	to give something away to help a person or organization	يتبرع

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.



Hi, I'm Tamer. At school, we started a project called Community Help. We all had to choose something we could do to **support** other people or things in our community. There were lots of ideas. For example, some people wanted to start a vegetable garden in the school to grow fresh fruit and vegetables. That was really popular. Other people **volunteered** to help clean trash from the river, so that animals' habitats are safer.

I decided that I wanted to help children in my school. I love sports, so I started an after-school club to teach the younger children football skills. I was a bit nervous at first, but lots of children joined in and their parents were very happy. It was great to have so many children **participating**.

I teach the class after school on Wednesdays. The class is for 45 minutes, and we train and play games. I like seeing the children get better at football, and it's really good fun, too.

مرحبًا، أنا تامر. في المدرسة، بدأنا مشروعًا يسمى مساعدة المجتمع. كان علينا جميعًا أن نختار شيئًا يمكننا القيام به لدعم الأشخاص أو الأشياء الأخرى في مجتمعنا. كان هناك الكثير من الأفكار. على سبيل المثال، أراد بعض الأشخاص إنشاء حديقة نباتية في المدرسة لزراعة الفواكه والخضروات الطازجة. كان ذلك محبوبًا جدًا. وتطوع أشخاص آخرون للمساعدة في تنظيف القمامة من النهر، حتى تكون مواطن الحيوانات أكثر أمانًا.

قررت أنني أريد مساعدة الأطفال في مدرستي. أنا أحب الرياضة، لذلك أنشأت ناديًا بعد المدرسة لتعليم الأطفال الصغار مهارات كرة القدم. كنت متوترًا بعض الشيء في البداية، ولكن انضم الكثير من الأطفال وكان آباؤهم سعداء للغاية. وكان من الرائع أن يشارك هذا العدد الكبير من الأطفال.

أقوم بتدريس الطلاب بعد المدرسة يوم الأربعاء. مدة الحصة 45 دقيقة، ونحن نتدرب ونلعب الألعاب. أحب رؤية الأطفال وهم يتحسنون في كرة القدم، وهو شئ ممتع جدًا.

Answer the following:

1. Who did Tamer want to help? ....
2. What does Tamer like seeing? ....
3. How often does Tamer volunteer? ....

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

Listen and read about:

استمع واقرأ عن:

Some more ideas for the Community Help Project.

Reem



I love reading, so I decided to **help out** in the kindergarten class on a Thursday by reading to the children. I love reading stories with the younger children, and they like it too. We're **starting up** a project where they think of their own stories next week. I'm looking forward to that.

أحب القراءة، لذلك قررت أن أساعد الأطفال في صف رياض الأطفال يوم الخميس من خلال القراءة للأطفال. أحب قراءة القصص مع الأطفال الصغار، وهم يحبون ذلك أيضًا.
نحن نبدأ مشروعًا حيث يفكرون في قصصهم الخاصة الأسبوع المقبل. أنا أتطلع إلى ذلك.

Ibrahim

My little sister was sick last month, and she was in the hospital. She's better now, but when we visited her, she was sad because she didn't like being there. I thought it would be nice to do something for children who are sick. My friends and I painted lots of big pictures of flowers, animals, beaches, and trees. Our parents **donated** lots of toys too. We took these and the paintings to the hospital to make the rooms look nicer.

كانت أختي الصغيرة مريضة الشهر الماضي، وكانت في المستشفى. وهي الآن أفضل، ولكن عندما زرناها كانت حزينة لأنها لم تكن تحب أن تكون هناك. اعتقدت أنه سيكون من الجيد أن أفعل شيئًا للأطفال المرضى. لقد رسمت أنا وأصدقائي الكثير من الصور الكبيرة للزهور والحيوانات والشواطئ والأشجار. تبرع آباؤنا بالكثير من الألعاب أيضًا. أخذنا هذه الألعاب واللوحات إلى المستشفى لجعل الغرف تبدو أجمل.

Mariam

My neighbor has always **been kind to** us. She used to help my mom **look after** me when I was younger. Now she's getting a bit older, and it's sometimes difficult for her to go shopping. So I ask her what she needs, then I go to the stores and get it. I like to help her.

لقد كانت جارتي دائمًا لطيفة معنا. كانت تساعد أمي في الاعتناء بي عندما كنت أصغر سناً. لقد كبرت الآن قليلاً، وأصبح من الصعب عليها أحيانًا الذهاب للتسوق. لذلك أسألها عما تحتاجه، ثم أذهب إلى المتاجر وأحضره. أنا أحب مساعدتها.

Answer the following:

1. What did Reem decide to do? ....
2. Why was Ibrahim's sister sad? ....
3. What did Mariam's neighbor use to do? ....

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. My neighbor has always been .... to us.
   a) clever b) cruel c) kind d) bad
2. She used to help my .... look after me.
   a) aunt b) sister c) uncle d) mom
3. It's sometimes .... for her to go shopping.
   a) easy b) difficult c) good d) bad
4. I go to the .... and get it. I like to help her.
   a) stores b) schools c) hospitals d) clubs

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I think it's very important to be kind .... animals
   a) of b) to c) at d) in
2. To give something away to help a person or organization means ....
   a) volunteer b) support c) participate d) donate
3. My mom sometimes helps .... at the school library.
   a) above b) out c) down d) up
4. To take part in something means to ....
   a) donate b) support c) participate d) volunteer
5. I looked .... my neighbors' pet cat when they went on vacation.
   a) before b) up c) forward d) after
6. .... means to do a job or activity and not take any money for it.
   a) Support b) Volunteer c) Donate d) Participate
7. We decided to start .... a local children's charity.
   a) up b) down c) on d) at
8. I help my neighbor because she lives ....
   a) lonely b) alone c) away d) nervous
9. I'm looking .... to my holiday.
   a) after b) forward c) for d) up
10. She lost her pen. She looked .... it everywhere.
    a) at b) in c) to d) for
11. When I was young, I .... to help my neighbor.
    a) use b) used c) ran d) did
12. I look after my little brother .... I like to help my mom.
    a) so b) because c) that d) to

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

forward - books - donate - starting up - help out

I love reading very much. I have lots of 1) .... at home. I decided to 2) .... in the kindergarten class by reading to the children. We're 3) .... a project where they think of their own stories next week. I'm looking 4) .... to that.

4 Read the following text then answer the questions.

Last week, my friends started a project called Community Help. They wanted to choose something they could do to support people and things in their community. Some of them wanted to start a vegetable garden in their area to grow fresh fruit and vegetables. Other friends volunteered to help clean the trash from the river, so that animals' habitats are safer. I decided to help children in my school. I started an after-school club to teach them football skills. It was great to have so many children participating.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Some of my friends wanted to start a vegetable ....
   a) market b) garden c) fair d) place
2. I decided to help children in my ....
   a) club b) centre c) school d) fun fair
3. They wanted to .... people and things.
   a) donate b) participate c) support d) volunteer

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What is the main idea of the passage? ....
5. What does the underlined word "them" refer to? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

1. reading - children - I - the younger - stories - with - love - .
....
2. neighbor - alone - I - lives - because - help - she - my - .
....
3. want - grow - did - people - What - some - to - ?
....

6 Punctuate the following.

- i want to help children in my school ....

Lesson (2) WE USE THIS TO PICK UP THE TRASH

Listen and say.




nature camera
كاميرا لتصوير الطبيعة


grabber
لاقط / ماسك


multi-grip
قبضة متعددة الأغراض


photocopier
آلة تصوير


laptop
حاسوب محمول


camera
كاميرا / آلة تصوير


speaker
مكبر صوت


headphones
سماعة رأس


scooter
سكوتر


radio
راديو


breathing mask
قناع التنفس


joysticks
ذراع / عصا التحكم



Key vocabulary

كلمات أساسية

handle	مقبض	day center	مركز رعاية نهاري
film	يصور	record	يُسجل
button	زر	install	يركب / يثبت
controller	جهاز تحكم	take off	يزيل

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Lesson (2)

Extra vocabulary كلمات إضافية

gloves	قفازات	games console	وحدة تحكم ألعاب
metal stick	عصا معدنية	forest	غابة
exhibition	معرض	menu	قائمة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال



Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
clean up	ينظف	cleaned up	cleaned up
pick up	يلتقط	picked up	picked up
squeeze	يعصر	squeezed	squeezed
press	يضغط	pressed	pressed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
wear	يرتدي / يلبس	wore	worn
buy	يشتري	bought	bought
put	يضع	put	put

Definitions تعريفات

button	something you press to make something happen	زر
joysticks	something you can move in different directions to control a computer game	ذراع / عصا تحكم
controller	something we use to play a computer game	جهاز تحكم

Help your child identify these words.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

Tamim

When we do a beach clean-up, we wear gloves to protect our hands. We carry black bags for the trash we collect. And look! We use this to pick up the trash. It's great fun to use. It's a long metal stick with two fingers at the end. The fingers open and close when you squeeze the handle at the top. You open and close the fingers to pick up the trash, then drop it in the bag. Mom says it's better than picking things up with your hands.

عندما نقوم بتنظيف الشاطئ، نرتدي قفازات لحماية أيدينا. نحمل أكياسًا سوداء للقمامة التي نجمعها. وانظر! نحن نستخدم هذا لالتقاط القمامة. إنه ممتع جدًا في استخدامه. إنها عصا معدنية طويلة بذراعين في نهايتها. تفتح الأذرع وتغلق عند الضغط على المقبض في الأعلى. تقوم بفتح وإغلاق الأذرع لالتقاط المهملات، ثم تضعها في الكيس. تقول أمي إنه أفضل من التقاط الأشياء بيديك.

Dalida

I volunteer at a **day center** for old people. Some old people can't open glass bottles and jars. Their hands aren't strong enough. So they use this to take off the tops. This is how you use it. Hold the jar with one hand and put this on the top. Hold this part with your other hand, and then turn it around. It's really easy to use. I love showing this to the people at the day center.

أنا أتطوع في مركز نهاري لكبار السن. بعض كبار السن لا يستطيعون فتح الزجاجات والبرطمانات. أيديهم ليست قوية بما فيه الكفاية. لذلك يستخدمون هذا لفتح الأغطية. هذه هي طريقة استخدامه. أمسك البرطمان بيد واحدة وضع هذا على الغطاء. أمسك هذا الجزء بيدك الأخرى، ثم قم بتدويره. إنها حقًا سهلة الاستعمال. أحب أن أعرض هذا على الأشخاص في المركز النهاري.

Hamza

We're doing a wildlife project at school, and my teacher **installed** two of these in the forest. We're using them to **film** wildlife. He put one on the ground to film animals at night. He put the other in a tree to film birds during the day. Then we **record** how many animals and birds we see, and what they're doing. It's so interesting. We've learned a lot!

نحن نقوم بتنفيذ مشروع عن الحياة البرية في المدرسة، وقد قام معلمي بتركيب اثنين من هذه في الغابة. نحن نستخدمها لتصوير الحياة البرية. لقد وضع واحدة على الأرض لتصوير الحيوانات ليلاً. ووضع الأخرى في شجرة لتصوير الطيور أثناء النهار. ثم نسجل عدد الحيوانات والطيور التي نراها وماذا يفعلون. إنه أمر مثير للاهتمام. لقد تعلمنا الكثير!

Answer the following:

1. Why does Tamim use a grabber on a beach clean-up? ....
2. Why do the old people use a multi-grip? ....
3. Why does Hamza's teacher put nature cameras in the forest? ....

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

Lesson (2)

Listen and read. استمع واقرأ.

Mom : Hi Amira. Is this your new games console? It looks great. What's this part for?

مرحبا أميرة. هل هذه وحدة تحكم الألعاب الجديدة الخاصة بك؟ تبدو رائعة. ما هذا الجزء؟

Amira : Oh, that's the **controller**. It's what you use to play the game.

أوه، هذا هو جهاز التحكم. هذا ما تستخدمه للعب اللعبة.

Mom : Cool! And what does this do? رائع! وما وظيفة هذا؟

Amira : That's the home **button**. When you press it, it takes you back to the menu.

هذا هو زر الصفحة الرئيسية. وعندما تضغط عليه يعود بك إلى القائمة.

Mom : OK. And what are these buttons for? حسنًا. وفيم تستخدم هذه الأزرار؟

Amira : Those are the action buttons. You use them to tell your character to run, jump, or do other actions.

تلك هي أزرار الحركة. يمكنك استخدامها لإخبار شخصيتك بالجري أو القفز أو القيام بحركات أخرى.

Mom : And what are these parts for? وفيم تستخدم هذه الأجزاء؟

Amira : They're the **joysticks**. They help you move your character around.

إنها عصا التحكم. إنها تساعدك على تحريك شخصيتك.

Mom : OK. So, the home button takes you to the menu, and the buttons and joysticks are for playing the game.

حسنًا. إذن، ينقلك زر الصفحة الرئيسية إلى القائمة، والأزرار وعصا التحكم مخصصة للعب اللعبة.

Amira : That's right. Do you want to play a game with me?

هذا صحيح. هل تريدي أن تلعبي لعبة معي؟

Read the description. What object is it?

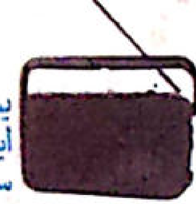
People use this to play games or watch movies. You can use it to find information on the internet. You can also write essays and do your homework on it. You can't photocopy paper with it.

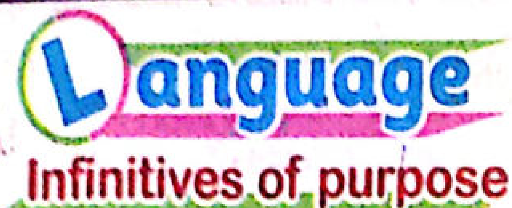


يستخدم الناس هذا لممارسة الألعاب أو مشاهدة الأفلام. يمكنك استخدامه للعثور على المعلومات على شبكة الإنترنت. يمكنك أيضًا كتابة المقالات والقيام بالواجبات المنزلية عليه. لا يمكنك تصوير الورق به.

People use this to listen to music or songs. You can use it to listen to the news. You can also use it to listen to comments on football matches and other sports. You can use headphones with it.

يستخدم الناس هذا للاستماع إلى الموسيقى أو الأغاني. يمكنك استخدامه للاستماع إلى الأخبار. يمكنك أيضًا استخدامه للاستماع إلى التعليقات على مباريات كرة القدم والرياضات الأخرى. يمكنك استخدام سماعة الرأس معه.





Infinitives of purpose

(to + inf.) لكي (للتعبير عن الغرض)

- We use to + a verb in the base form to explain why we do something.

" المصدر + to " لكي نوضح لماذا نفعل الشيء.

e.g. We wear gloves to protect our hands.

- We use also to + base form verb to answer questions with why.

نستخدم أيضًا " المصدر + to " لكي نجيب على الأسئلة التي تبدأ بـ "Why".

e.g. Why do you wear gloves on a beach clean-up? To protect my hands.

1 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. I bought a card to .... (sent) to my grandma
2. Nesma wears sunglasses to .... (protecting) her eyes.
3. My uncle went to Cairo to .... (visiting) a friend.
4. Mom is using an app to .... (learns) French.
5. Rahma listens to music to .... (helped) her relax.
6. Lama painted a picture to .... (putting) in the exhibition.
7. They make lemonade to .... (sells) in the market.
8. Farah traveled by bus to .... (saw) her cousins.
9. We bought some candy to .... (eats) during the movie.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. We use the paintings to .... the rooms look nicer.
   a) make b) makes c) made d) making
2. I went to the club .... play games.
   a) in b) to c) at d) on
3. Heba wears jewelry to .... good.
   a) looks b) looked c) look d) looking

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. We're doing a wildlife .... at school.
   a) test b) quiz c) project d) essay
2. My teacher installed two nature .... in the forest.
   a) mobiles b) cameras c) laptops d) computers
3. We're using them to .... wildlife.
   a) film b) paint c) draw d) color
4. He put one on the ground to film animals at ....
   a) height b) noon c) night d) midnight

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. When we do a beach clean- .... , we wear gloves to protect our hands.
   a) down b) up c) after d) before
2. We use a .... to pick up the trash.
   a) nature camera b) grabber c) multi-grip d) camera
3. The grabber is a long .... stick.
   a) water b) silk c) metal d) paper
4. You can use the grabber when you squeeze the ....
   a) candle b) handle c) sand d) land
5. I volunteer at a .... center for old people.
   a) second b) time c) while d) day
6. They use a .... to take off the tops.
   a) grabber b) nature camera c) multi-grip d) laptop
7. My teacher .... two nature cameras in the forest.
   a) told b) called c) sold d) installed
8. A .... is something you press to make something happen.
   a) controller b) button c) joystick d) photocopier
9. A .... is something you can move in different directions to control a computer game.
   a) camera b) speaker c) joystick d) laptop
10. A .... is something we use to play a computer game.
    a) scooter b) radio c) headphone d) controller .

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

top - multi-grip - strong - weak - open

I volunteer at a day center for old people. Some old people can't 1) .... glass bottles and jars. Their hands aren't 2) .... enough. So they use a 3) .... to take off the tops. They hold the jar with one hand and put the multi-grip on the 4) .... to take it off.

4 Read the following text then answer the questions.

We're doing a wildlife project at school, and my teacher installed two of these in the forest. We're using them to film wildlife. He put one on the ground to film animals at night. He put the other in a tree to film birds during the day. Then we record how many animals and birds we see, and what they're doing. It's so interesting. We've learned a lot!

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. We're doing a .... project at school
   a) science   b) geography   c) wildlife   d) industry
2. My teacher .... two nature cameras in the forest
   a) took   b) gave   c) marked   d) installed
3. He put a camera on the .... to film animals at night.
   a) branch   b) plant   c) ground   d) tree

B) Answer the following questions.

4. Where did the teacher put the other camera? ....
5. What did they record? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

1. water - under - You - swim - to - this - use - .

....

2. ears - your - over - It's - goes - that - the part - .

....

3. Lama - put - painted - to - a picture - the exhibition - in - .

....



Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

4. lemonade - to - the market - in - They - sell - make - .

....

5. by bus - her cousins - see - Farah - to - traveled - .

....

6. some candy - bought - the movie - to - We - during - eat - .

....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. A pen is used to .... (writing) with.
2. Cameras are used .... (for) take pictures.
3. You press the button to .... (made) something happen.
4. We wear gloves to .... (protecting) our hands.
5. We start a vegetable garden .... (grows) fresh fruits and vegetables.
6. They use a multi-grip to .... (took) off the tops.
7. I bought a card to .... (sending) to my grandma.
8. I went to the sports center to .... (played) volleyball.
9. He put the camera on the ground to .... (filming) animals at night.
10. I opened the fridge to .... (taking) a bottle of water.
11. You open and close the fingers .... (at) pick up the trash.

7 Punctuate the following.

- do you want to play a game with me

....

- the home button takes you to the menu

....

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

A photocopier

Guiding elements:

- What is it?
- What do people use it for?

....

....

....

Lesson (3) Part (A) IT'S GO[illegible]CK TO THE COMMUNITY

Key vocabulary

كلمات أساسية

socialize	يتواصل اجتماعيًا / يختلط	confidence	ثقة
fundraising	جمع تبرعات	give back	يرد الجميل

Extra vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

healthy eating	أكل صحي	summer school	مدرسة صيفية
charity	مؤسسة خيرية	teenagers	مراهقين

Definitions

تعريفات

socialize	spend time with people in a friendly way	يختلط / يتواصل اجتماعيًا
confidence	feeling sure about your abilities	ثقة
fundraising	collecting money for a charity	جمع تبرعات
give back	to help others because you have received so much	يرد الجميل

Rawan

You learn many important life skills when you volunteer. You learn how to **socialize** and talk to people you wouldn't usually meet. Volunteering also gives you **confidence**. It's amazing to see how teenagers grow in confidence when they start volunteering. **Fundraising** helps charities get the money they need. It's good to **give back** to the place where you live. My advice to teenagers is volunteer and help if you can. You'll enjoy it!



أنت تتعلم العديد من المهارات الحياتية المهمة عندما تتطوع. تتعلم كيفية التواصل الاجتماعي والتحدث مع الأشخاص الذين لا تقابلهم عادةً. كما يمنحك العمل التطوعي الثقة. إنه لأمر مدهش أن نرى كيف تنمو ثقة المراهقين عندما يبدأون العمل التطوعي. يساعد جمع التبرعات المؤسسات الخيرية في الحصول على الأموال التي تحتاجها. من الجيد أن ترد الجميل للمكان الذي تعيش فيه. نصيحتي للمراهقين هي التطوع والمساعدة إذا استطعتم. سوف تستمتعون بذلك!

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.



Adverbs
الأحوال / الظروف

❶ **An Adverb is a word that describes a verb.** الحال / الظرف هو كلمة تصف فعل.

e.g. He waited patiently. - They walked quickly.

Form

❷ **We can make adverbs by adding -ly to most adjectives.**

يتكون الحال / الظرف بإضافة " ly " إلى معظم الصفات.

quick → quickly slow → slowly

- Adjectives that end in a constant followed by y, add -ily.

الصفات التي تنتهي بساكن وبعده "y" نحول "y" إلى "ily".

happy → happily angry → angrily.

Adjective		Adverb		Adjective		Adverb	
beautiful	جميل	beautifully	بجمال	angry	غضبان	angrily	بغضب
quiet	هادئ	quietly	بهدوء	happy	سعيد	happily	بسعادة
kind	عطوف	kindly	بعطف	patient	صبور	patiently	بصبر

❸ **Adverb normally comes after the verb.** الحال يأتي بعد الفعل.

e.g. He shouted angrily.

❹ **Adverbs can come before or after a verb and its object. The adverb can't come between the verb and its object.**

يمكن أن تأتي الأحوال قبل أو بعد فعل ومفعوله. ولا يمكن أن تأتي بين الفعل ومفعوله.

e.g. She quickly learned the rules. (✓) - She learned quickly the rules. (✗)

She learned the rules quickly. (✓)

❺ **Some adverbs are irregular.** بعض الأحوال غير منتظمة.

Adjective		Adverb	
good	جيد	**well**	بطريقة جيدة
fast	سريع	**fast**	بسرعة
hard	صعب / شاق	**hard**	بجد

e.g. He is a fast runner. He runs fast

She is good at painting. She draws well.



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. They walked ....
   a) quick b) quicker c) quickly d) quickest
2. He shouted ....
   a) angry b) hungrily c) anger d) angrily
3. She .... learned the rules.
   a) quickest b) quick c) quicker d) quickly
4. Anas is a slow boy. He walks ....
   a) slow b) slowly c) slower d) slowest
5. The man was sad. He talked ....
   a) sadly b) sad c) happy d) happily

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. Younis hates playing tennis. He plays ....(bad).
2. Dalia came first in the running race. She runs really ....(fast).
3. Sherif opened the door .... (quiet) because his little brother was sleeping.
4. Maged's picture of a horse is excellent. He draws very .... (good).
5. I heard two people shouting ....(angry) in the street today.
6. Adam was very hungry, and he ate his meal .... (quick).
7. Their cousins donated money .... (kind) to our charity.
8. Mr Ibrahim waited ....(patient) for the train to arrive.
9. Fareeda ....(beautiful) plays the piano and the violin.
10. Dalida volunteered ....(happy) at the children's day center.
11. The lion hunted the deer .... (quick) and ate it.
12. The teacher explained the lesson .... (good).
13. The librarian gave me a book to read .... (silent).
14. The children talked .... (angry) to each other.
15. The sky was dark. It rained .... (heavy).

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Rawan started .... when she was 10 years old.
   a) swimming b) reading c) volunteering d) cycling
2. She helps children learn ....
   a) speaking b) writing c) listening d) reading
3. She likes helping children because they're the ....
   a) future b) past c) present d) tense
4. Her advice for teenagers is be ....
   a) important b) lazy c) bored d) patient

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Safia likes .... It gives her confidence.
   a) eating b) football c) volunteering d) watching TV
2. " .... " means to spend time with people in a friendly way .
   a) Socialize b) Visualize c) Analyze d) Volunteering
3. " .... " means feeling sure about your abilities.
   a) Charity b) Socialize c) Teenagers d) Confidence
4. .... helps charities get the money they need.
   a) Fundraising b) Volunteering c) Playing d) Confidence
5. " .... " means to help others because you have received so much.
   a) Fundraising b) Confidence c) Give back d) Socialize

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

give back - Fundraising - amazing - confidence - socialize

You learn life skills when you volunteer. You learn how to 1) .... and talk to people. It gives you 2) .... when you start volunteering. 3) .... helps charities get the money they need. It's good to 4) .... to the place where you live.



4 Read the following text then answer the questions.

You learn many important life skills when you volunteer. You learn how to socialize and talk to people you wouldn't usually meet. Volunteering also gives you confidence. It's amazing to see how teenagers grow in confidence when they start volunteering. Fundraising helps charities get the money they need. It's good to give back to the place where you live. My advice to teenagers is volunteer and help if you can. You'll enjoy it!

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. When you volunteer, you learn many ....
   a) **sports** b) **life skills** c) **charities** d) **ideas**
2. Volunteering also gives you ....
   a) **confidence** b) **horror** c) **fear** d) **cheat**
3. Fundraising helps charities get the .... they need.
   a) **advice** b) **money** c) **air** d) **smoke**

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What does the writer advise teenagers to do? ....

5. What is the main idea of the text? ....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. They lost the match because they played .... (bad).
2. You must cross the street .... (careful).
3. My brother can play football very .... (good).
4. Ali shouted .... (angry) at his sister.
5. Omar can run .... (fastly). He always wins.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

1. children - helping - Why - like - Seif - does - ?

   ....

2. money - they - need - Fundraising - the - get - helps - charities - .

   ....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Lesson (3) Part (B)

READING

Key Vocabulary

كلمات أساسية

reward	مكافأة	jealous	غيور	sparrow	عصفور
seed	بذرة	thick	سميك	rich	غني
village	قرية	huge	ضخم	disappear	يختفي
reach	يصل	wing	جناح	care for	يهتم بـ

Definitions

تعريفات

jealous	feeling unhappy because someone has what you want	غيور
reward	something you get for doing a good job or being helpful	مكافأة

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

Two Brothers, Two Rewards

Once, there were two brothers who were very different. The older brother was the richest man in the village. He was rich, but he always wanted more money. The younger brother wasn't rich, but he was kind and shared what he had with his friends.

ذات مرة، كان هناك شقيقان مختلفان تمامًا. كان الأخ الأكبر أغنى رجل في القرية. لقد كان ثريًا، لكنه كان دائمًا يريد المزيد من المال. لم يكن الأخ الأصغر ثريًا، لكنه كان لطيفًا ويشارك ما كان لديه مع أصدقائه.

One day, the younger brother found a bird with a broken wing. "Don't worry, little bird," he said. "I will look after you." He cared for the bird all winter, and when the bird was strong again, he said, "You can fly away now." "First, I want to give you a **reward**," said the bird. "Plant this seed in your garden and look after it like you looked after me."

في أحد الأيام، وجد الأخ الأصغر طائرًا جناحه مكسور. قال: "لا تقلق أيها الطائر الصغير سوف أعتني بك." لقد اعتنى بالطائر طوال فصل الشتاء، وعندما أصبح الطائر قويًا مرة أخرى، قال: "يمكنك الطيران بعيدًا الآن". قال الطائر: "أولاً، أريد أن أعطيك مكافأة ازرع هذه البذرة في حديقتك واعتني بها كما اعتنيت بي."

The brother planted the seed and watched it grow into a huge plant with big, orange vegetables. When the brother cut one open, it was full of gold and silver! He was now the richest man in the village!

زرع الأخ البذرة وشاهدها وهي تنمو لتصبح نباتًا ضخمًا يحتوي على خضروات ضخمة برتقالية اللون. وعندما فتح الأخ واحدة، كانت مليئة بالذهب والفضة! والآن أصبح أغنى رجل في القرية!

The older brother was **jealous**. He went to his brother's house, and his brother told him about the bird. The next day, the older brother caught a **sparrow** and broke its wing. He said, "I'll look after you, then you can give me a reward." He looked after the bird, and when it was strong, he said, "Now I want my reward." The little bird replied, "Here is your reward. Plant this seed and look after it well."

كان الأخ الأكبر غيورًا. ذهب إلى بيت أخيه، فأخبره أخوه عن الطائر. في اليوم التالي، أمسك الأخ الأكبر بعصفور وكسر جناحه. وقال له: "سأعتني بك، ثم يمكنك أن تعطيني مكافأة". اعتنى بالطائر، وعندما أصبح قوياً، قال: "الآن أريد مكافأتي". أجاب الطائر الصغير: "هذه هي مكافأتك. ازرع هذه البذرة واعتنِ بها جيدًا."

The older brother planted the seed, and soon a thick, tall plant grew up and up to the moon. The brother climbed up the plant to look for his reward. But when he reached the moon, the plant disappeared. He was alone, and he couldn't go back.

زرع الأخ الأكبر البذرة، وسرعان ما نما نبات طويل وسميك ووصل إلى القمر. تسلق الأخ النبات ليبحث عن مكافأته. ولكن عندما وصل إلى القمر اختفى النبات. لقد كان وحيدًا، ولم يتمكن من العودة.

The older brother didn't find any gold. So now, he looks down from the Moon, and watches his kind, younger brother living happily and helping others.

لم يجد الأخ الأكبر أي ذهب. والآن، ينظر للأسفل من القمر، ويشاهد أخاه الطيب الأصغر يعيش بسعادة ويساعد الآخرين.



Read again and write T (True) or F (False).

1. The younger brother was kind to his friends, but he wasn't rich. ( )
2. The younger brother found an injured mouse and looked after it. ( )
3. The older brother was jealous when his brother became rich. ( )
4. The older brother looked after an injured bird because he loved it. ( )
5. The older brother found his reward on the Moon and shared it with his brother. ( )

Help your child listen and read.

ساعد طفلك أن يستمع ويقرأ.

Lesson (3) Part (C)

PRONUNCIATION

Look, listen and repeat.

انظر، استمع وردد.

ch, sh and tch sounds








rich	chop	fish	shoe	watch	catch
غني	يقطع	سمكة	فردة حذاء	يشاهد	يمسك

sh /ʃ/					
ship	سفينة	sheep	خروف / غنم	wash	يغسل
shirt	قميص	shop	محل / يتسوق	cash	نقد
shells	أصداف	dishes	أطباق		

ch /tʃ/					
chip	رقاقة	lunch	غذاء	reach	يصل
chicken	دجاجة	teacher	معلم / معلمة		

tch /tʃ/					
kitchen	مطبخ	catch	يمسك	watch	يشاهد



Complete the words with sh, ch, or tch.

__ eep	ca __	wa __	lun __
__ op	di __ es	wa __	fi __
tea __ er	__ op	ki __ en	rea __

Help your child say words containing sh, ch, and tch.

ساعد طفلك أن يقول كلمات تحتوي على ch ، sh و tch

General Activities

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The older brother .... a seed.
   a) dug b) brought c) planted d) saw
2. The brother climbed .... the plant.
   a) down b) up c) in d) on
3. When he reached the ...., the plant disappeared.
   a) moon b) sun c) star d) sky
4. He was alone, and he couldn't .... back.
   a) swim b) run c) go d) fly

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. They younger brother was kind to his ....
   a) books b) friends c) plants d) bags
2. .... means feeling unhappy because someone has what you want.
   a) Sparrow b) Jealous c) Reward d) Award
3. The older brother caught a .... and broke its wing.
   a) cow b) fox c) sparrow d) dog
4. "......... " means something you get for doing a good job or being helpful.
   a) Award b) Quiz c) Test d) Reward

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

reward - present - away - after - broken

One day, the younger brother found a bird with a 1) .... wing. "Don't worry, little bird, " he said. " I will look 2) .... you." He cared for the bird all winter, and when the bird was strong again, he said, " You can fly 3) .... now." "First, I want to give you a 4) ...." said the bird. "Plant this seed in your garden and look after it like you looked after me."

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



Read the following text then answer the questions.

One day, a younger farmer found a bird with a broken wing. "Don't worry, little bird," he said. "I will look after you." He cared for the bird all winter, and when the bird was strong again, he said, "You can fly away now." "First, I want to give you a reward," said the bird. "Plant this seed in your garden and look after it like you looked after me." The farmer planted the seed and watched it grow into a **huge** plant with big, orange vegetables. When he cut one open, it was full of gold and silver! He was now the richest man in the village!

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The bird had a broken ....
   a) **beak** b) **wing** c) **leg** d) **bone**
2. The underlined word "winter" is a ....
   a) **season** b) **subject** c) **month** d) **sport**
3. The word "huge" means very ....
   a) **small** b) **short** c) **little** d) **big**

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What do you think of the farmer?

....

5. What was one of the orange vegetables full of?

....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

1. brother - his - of - jealous - brother - The older - is - younger - .

....

2. the bird - What - give - did - the - brother - younger - ?

....

6 Punctuate the following.

- he was rich but wanted more money

....

- what did he do to the bird

....

Lessons (4 & 5) WRITING: A BIOGRAPHY PROJECT

Vocabulary الكلمات

biography	سيرة ذاتية يكتبها شخص عن آخر	leader	قائد
youth	الشباب	award	يمنح جائزة
preparatory school	الدراسة الإعدادية	fundraiser	جامع تبرعات
university	جامعة	citizen	مواطن
social science	العلوم الأجتماعية	waste	فضلات
playground	ملعب	draft	مسودة
shopping	تسوق	timeline	خط زمني
event	حدث	leaflet	منشور / نشرة / مطوية
food boxes	صناديق طعام	headings	عناوين رئيسية
fundraising	جمع تبرعات	local	محلي
successful	ناجح	neighbor	جار

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past	P.P
organize	ينظم	organized	organized
deliver	يُوصل	delivered	delivered
raise	يجمع	raised	raised
improve	يُحسن	improved	improved
offer	يعرض	offered	offered
reduce	يقلل	reduced	reduced
recycle	يعيد تدوير	recycled	recycled
participate	يُشارك	participated	participated
lead	يقود	led	led
win	يفوز	won	won
run	يجري / يُدير	ran	run

Important expressions and prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Youth Give Back	الشباب يرد الجميل	beach clean-up	تنظيف الشاطئ
run a charity	يدير جمعية خيرية	a good citizen	مواطن صالح

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.



Fareeda Hassan: A Biography

فريدة حسن: سيرة ذاتية

Early Life

مرحلة مبكرة من الحياة

Fareeda Hassan was born in Alexandria in 1994. As a child, Fareeda helped her mom buy her elder neighbors' shopping.

ولدت فريدة حسن في الإسكندرية عام ١٩٩٤. عندما كانت طفلة، ساعدت فريدة والدتها في شراء مشتريات جيرانها الأكبر سناً.

Volunteering at School

العمل التطوعي في المدرسة

Fareeda started preparatory school in 2006. Here, she participated in her first volunteer event. She and a team of volunteers did a beach clean-up. In 2010, she organized her first charity event delivering food boxes to families in the community.

بدأت فريدة الدراسة للمرحلة الإعدادية في عام ٢٠٠٦. وشاركت وقتها في أول حدث تطوعي لها. قامت هي وفريق من المتطوعين بتنظيف الشاطئ. في عام ٢٠١٠، نظمت أول حدث خيري لها لتوصيل صناديق الطعام للعائلات في المجتمع.

The University Years

سنوات الجامعة

In 2012, Fareeda went to university to study social sciences. Here, she organized a fundraising event to raise money for a new playground.

في عام ٢٠١٢، ذهبت فريدة إلى الجامعة لدراسة العلوم الاجتماعية. وقتها قامت بتنظيم حدث لجمع التبرعات من أجل ملعب جديد.

Working in Charities

العمل في الجمعيات الخيرية

In 2017, Fareeda started her first job as a community volunteer leader in Cairo. Since then, she has helped many people. In 2020, she led a "Youth Give Back" project in six cities in Egypt. It was so successful that she won the "2020 Community Worker" award. Today, she runs a charity for children.

في عام ٢٠١٧، بدأت فريدة وظيفتها الأولى كقائدة مجتمعية متطوعة في القاهرة. ومنذ ذلك الحين، ساعدت الكثير من الناس. وفي عام ٢٠٢٠، قادت مشروع "الشباب يرد الجميل" في ست مدن في مصر. لقد كان ناجحًا جدًا لدرجة أنها فازت بجائزة "العامل المجتمعي لعام ٢٠٢٠". واليوم تدير مؤسسة خيرية للأطفال.

Read the biography again and answer the questions:

1. How did Fareeda help her neighbors when she was a child? ....
2. What was her first volunteer event at preparatory school? ....
3. What did she study at university? ....
4. What award did she win? ....

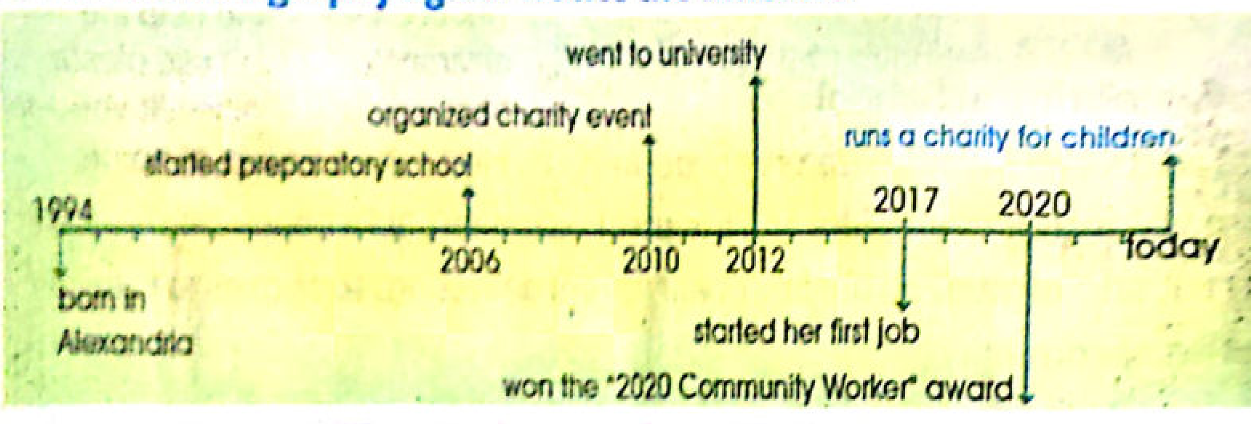


Tip!

When writing a biography, it helps to make a timeline of events, starting from the date of birth. Add important events and their dates to the timeline. This helps you organize the information in the correct order.

عند كتابة سيرة ذاتية من المفيد أن تعمل جدول زمني للأحداث، يبدأ من تاريخ الميلاد. أضف الأحداث المهمة وتواريخها إلى الجدول زمني. وهذا يساعدك على تنظيم المعلومات بالترتيب الصحيح.

Read the biography again. Notice the timeline.



Plan a biography for "Fares Shawky". Create a timeline using the information blow.

- 1996 born in Cairo
- 2008 started preparatory school
- 2008 volunteered in charity car wash
- 2014 went to university
- 2022 first job as a charity fundraiser
- Today runs a children's charity in Luxor

Fares Shawky : A Biography

Early life :

....

....

Volunteering :

....

....

The University Years :

....

....

Working in charities :

....

....

Help your child write a biography.

ساعد طفلك أن يكتب سيرة ذاتية.



Read the leaflet. How can you reduce waste?

Ways to Be a Good Citizen

There are lots of ways you can volunteer to help your community.

هناك الكثير من الطرق التي يمكنك من خلالها التطوع لمساعدة مجتمعك.



Respect Others: Be polite and kind to your neighbors. Help people who are old or sick. Call your neighbors to ask how you can help. You can offer to do their shopping or do jobs for them at home.

احترام الآخرين: كن مهذبًا ولطيفًا مع جيرانك. ساعد الأشخاص المسنين أو المرضى. اتصل بجيرانك واسألهم كيف يمكنك المساعدة. يمكنك أن تعرض عليهم القيام بالتسوق أو القيام بأعمال لهم في المنزل.

Protect the Environment: Reduce waste and help the environment. Don't use plastic bags or plastic bottles. If you have plastic bottles at home, recycle them.
Let's all be good citizens and make the world a better place!

حماية البيئة: قلل المخلفات وساعد البيئة. لا تستخدم أكياس بلاستيكية أو زجاجات بلاستيكية. إن كان لديك زجاجات بلاستيكية في المنزل، قم بإعادة تدويرها. لنكن جميعًا مواطنين صالحين ونجعل العالم مكان أفضل!



Help the Community: Volunteer at a local charity event or help out on a community project. Volunteering isn't boring. It's interesting. You'll be surprised how much you enjoy it.

مساعدة المجتمع: تطوع في حدث خيري محلي أو ساعد في مشروع مجتمعي. العمل التطوعي ليس مملاً. إنه شيق. سوف تندهش بمدى استمتاعك به.





Read again and answer.

1. What could you do for your neighbors?

....

2. What ways could you volunteer in your community?

....

3. What could you do to help the environment?

....

Help your child make a leaflet.

ساعد طفلك أن يقوم بعمل منشور.

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Fareeda started .... school in 2006.
   a) primary b) preparatory c) secondary d) university
2. She participated in her first volunteer ....
   a) hint b) tent c) event d) competition
3. She did a beach clean- ....
   a) down b) on c) at d) up
4. In 2010, she organized her first .... event.
   a) helping b) calling c) charity d) planting

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Be polite and .... to your neighbors.
   a) cruel b) bad c) kind d) hard
2. .... waste and help the environment.
   a) Increase b) Reduce c) Hire d) Bring
3. Volunteering isn't ....
   a) good b) interesting c) boring d) better
4. Let's all be good .... and make the world a better place.
   a) players b) citizens c) engineers d) divers

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

successful - led - started - helped - community

In 2017, Fareeda started her first job as a 1) .... volunteer leader in Cairo. Since then, she has 2) .... many people. In 2020, she 3) .... a "Youth Give Back" project in six cities in Egypt. It was so 4) .... that she won the "2020 Community Worker" award. Today, she runs a charity for children.

Help your child deal with such questions.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



4 Read the following text then answer the questions.

We all live together in a community. We should be good citizens. There are lots of ways, we can volunteer to help our community. We can volunteer at a local charity event or help out on a community project. Volunteering is <u>interesting</u>. We must be polite and kind to our neighbors. We could call neighbors and offer to do <u>their</u> shopping. We must respect the environment. We could reduce waste and recycle plastic bottles. Let's all be good citizens and make the world a better place.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The main idea of the text is about being ....
   a) community b) good citizens c) neighbors d) recycle
2. The word "interesting" is the opposite of ....
   a) exciting b) bored c) boring d) amazing
3. The underlined word "their" refers to ....
   a) neighbors b) citizens c) community d) charities

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What could we do to help the environment? ....
5. How should you deal with neighbors? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

1. started - <u>She</u> - 2007 - preparatory - in - school - .

....

2. environment - the - <u>What</u> - help - to - do - you - could - ?

....

6 Punctuate the following.

- help people who are old or sick

....

7 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Ways to be a good citizen

Guiding elements:

- Respect others.
- Help the community.

....

....

....

Writing Corner

Volunteering

Volunteering is a very good way to help our community. It's interesting. At school, we started a project called "Community Help". We had to choose something we could do to support other people or things in our community. Some people planted a vegetable garden in the school to grow fresh fruit and vegetables. Other people volunteered to help clean trash from the river so that animals' habitats are safer.

A wildlife project

We're doing a wildlife project at school, and my teacher installed two nature cameras in the forest. We're using them to film wildlife. He put one on the ground to film animals at night. He put the other in a tree to film birds during the day. Then we record how many animals and birds we see, and what they're doing. It's so interesting. We've learned a lot!

Volunteering

You learn many important life skills when you volunteer. You learn how to socialize and talk to people you wouldn't usually meet. Volunteering also gives you confidence. It's amazing to see how teenagers grow in confidence when they start volunteering. Fundraising helps charities get the money they need. It's good to give back to the place where you like.

A biography

Fareeda Hassan was born in Alexandria in 1994. As a child, Fareeda helped her mom buy her elder neighbors' shopping. Fareeda started preparatory school in 2006. Here, she participated in her first volunteer event. She and a team of volunteers did a beach clean-up. In 2010, she organized her first charity event delivering food boxes to families in the community. In 2020, she led a "Youth Give Back" project in Egypt. It was so successful that she won the "2020 Community Worker" award.

Review on Unit (11)

Vocabulary

donate	يتبرع	participate	يشارك	support	يساند - يدعم
volunteer	يتطوع	help out	يساعد في	start up	يبدأ
jealous	غيور	multi-grip	مقبض متعدد الأغراض	install	يركب / يثبت
record	يسجل	reward	يكافيء / مكافأة	sparrow	عصفور
kind to	عطوف مع	look after	يعتني بـ	day center	مركز رعاية نهاري
confidence	ثقة	fundraising	جمع تبرعات	give back	يرد الجميل
grabber	أداة التقاط / ماسك	handle	مقبض	film	يُصور
socialize	يتواصل اجتماعيًا	nature camera			كاميرا لتصوير الطبيعة

Pronunciation

sh /ʃ/		ch /tʃ/		tch /tʃ/	
shoe	فردة حذاء	rich	غني	watch	يشاهد
shop	محل	chop	يقطع	catch	يمسك
ship	سفينة	chip	رقاقة	kitchen	مطبخ

Language

to + inf.

- تستخدم (to + inf) لبيان الغرض.

We wear gloves to protect our hands.

Adverbs الظروف

- An Adverb is a word that describes a verb. الحال / الظرف هو كلمة تصف الفعل.

- يتكون الحال بإضافة "ly" إلى الصفة.

quick → quickly

- They walk quickly.

- هناك بعض الأحوال الشاذة.

good → well fast → fast hard → hard

- He runs fast. - She plays well.

Dictation on Unit (11)

Lesson (1)

يساند / يدعم	يتطوع ....
يشارك	يساعد في ....
يبدأ	عطوف مع ....
يعتني بـ	قمامة ....

Lesson (2)

مقبض متعدد الأغراض	مقبض ....
كاميرا لتصوير الطبيعة	مركز رعاية نهاري ....
ماسك / لاقط	زر ....
ذراع تحكم	جهاز تحكم ....

Lesson (3)

يتواصل اجتماعيًا	ثقة ....
جمع تبرعات	يرد الجميل ....
مكافأة	غيور ....
عصفور	غني ....
يشاهد	خراف / خروف ....
فردة حذاء	يقطع ....
يمسك	مطبخ ....
رقاقة	سفينة ....
يغسل	غذاء ....
يصل	أطباق ....

Lessons (4 & 5)

يحترم	بيئة ....
يحمي	مشروع ....
يساعد	يقلل ....
مجتمع	يعيد تدوير ....

Help your child dictate these words.

ساعد طفلك في إملاء هذه الكلمات.

Activities on Unit (11)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I love ....
   a) singing b) dancing c) reading d) diving
2. I .... in the kindergarten class.
   a) help out b) cut off c) look for d) make out
3. I love reading .... with the younger children.
   a) magazines b) articles c) stories d) leaflets
4. We're starting .... a project.
   a) up b) out c) down d) of

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. We .... to help in the community service project every year.
   a) dismiss b) volunteer c) press d) do
2. I help mom and look .... my little brother.
   a) before b) down c) after d) up
3. Children who .... in a group activity usually have lots of fun!
   a) participate b) look c) make d) write
4. If you want to help, ... money to a charity.
   a) ask b) donate c) paint d) draw

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

painted - being - having - sad - hospital

My little sister was sick last month, and she was in the 1) .... She's better now, but when we visited her, she was 2) .... because she didn't like 3) .... there. I thought it would be nice to do something for children who are sick. My friends and I 4) .... lots of big pictures of flowers, animals, beaches, and trees.



4 Read the following text then answer the questions.

When we do a beach clean-up, we wear gloves to protect our hands. We carry black bags for the trash we collect. And look! We use a grabber to pick up the trash. It's a long metal stick with two fingers at the end. The fingers open and close when you squeeze the handle at the top. You open and close the fingers to pick up the trash, then drop it in the bag. Mom says it's better than picking things up with your hand.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. When we do a beach clean-up we, wear gloves to .... our hands.
   a) **cut** b) **bleed** c) **protect** d) **spoil**
2. We put the trash in .... bags.
   a) **brown** b) **black** c) **green** d) **yellow**
3. We use a .... to pick up the trash.
   a) **nature camera** b) **grabber** c) **multi-grip** d) **radio**

B) Answer the following questions.

4. Describe the grabber. ....
5. What's your mother's opinion about the grabber? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

1. children - my - in - school - help - to - wanted - I - .

....

2. to - center - I - to play - volleyball - went - the sports - .

....

3. grow - wanted - vegetables - to - They - fruit - and - .

....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. They make lemonade to .... (selling) in the market.
2. Safia draws very .... (good).

7 Punctuate the following.

- sherif s picture is nice. ....

8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about "Scooter":

Guiding elements:

- What is it? **- What do people use it for?**

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Al-Azhar Corner

1 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

character - buttons - menu - do - controller

Mom : Your new games console looks great. What is this part for?
Amira: That's the 1) .... You use it to play the game.
Mom : What does this 2) .... ?
Amira: That's the home button. It takes you back to the 3) ....
Mom : What are these 4) .... for?
Amira: For telling your 5) .... to run or jump.

Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

went - preparatory - started - university - 1994

Anas : When was Fareeda Hassan born?
Seif : She was born in 1) ....
Anas : When did she start 2) .... school?
Saif : She 3) .... in 2006.
Anas : When did she go to 4) .... ?
Saif : She 5) .... to university in 2012.

2 Read and circle the odd one out and replace it.

1.	donate	participate	support	volunteered	(.....................)
2.	What	Why	was	Who	(.....................)
3.	flowers	beaches	trees	plants	(.....................)
4.	kind	start up	help out	look after	(.....................)
5.	headphones	scooter	play	radio	(.....................)

Read and circle the odd one out and replace it.

1.	angry	good	quickly	bad	(.....................)
2.	angrily	quietly	quickly	slow	(.....................)
3.	sheep	fish	shoes	watch	(.....................)
4.	lunch	chop	chip	catch	(.....................)
5.	camera	radio	news	snorkel	(.....................)

Unit 12

FICTION READER: ATEMU AND AMETHYST

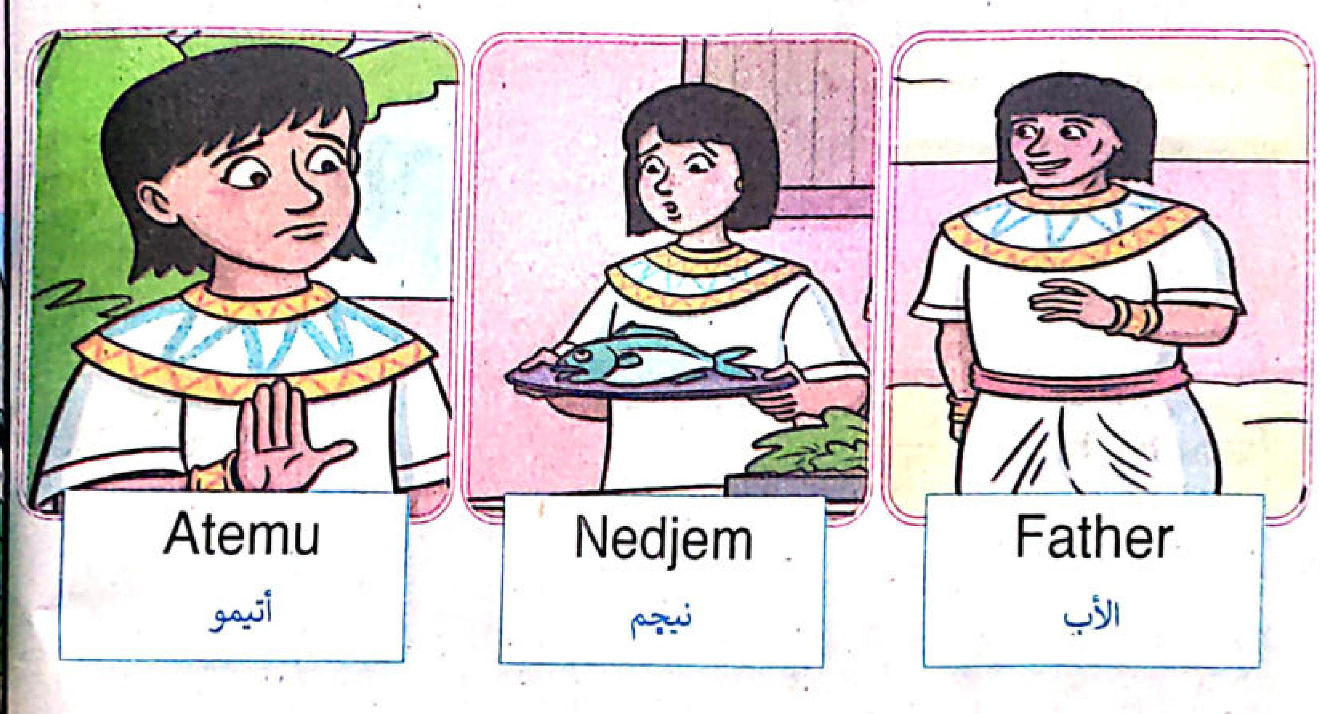
أتيمو والحمامة أميثست



BY JENNY FARMER

ILLUSTRATED BY MATT WARD

Characters



Atemu
أتيمو

Nedjem
نيجم

Father
الأب



Mother
الأم

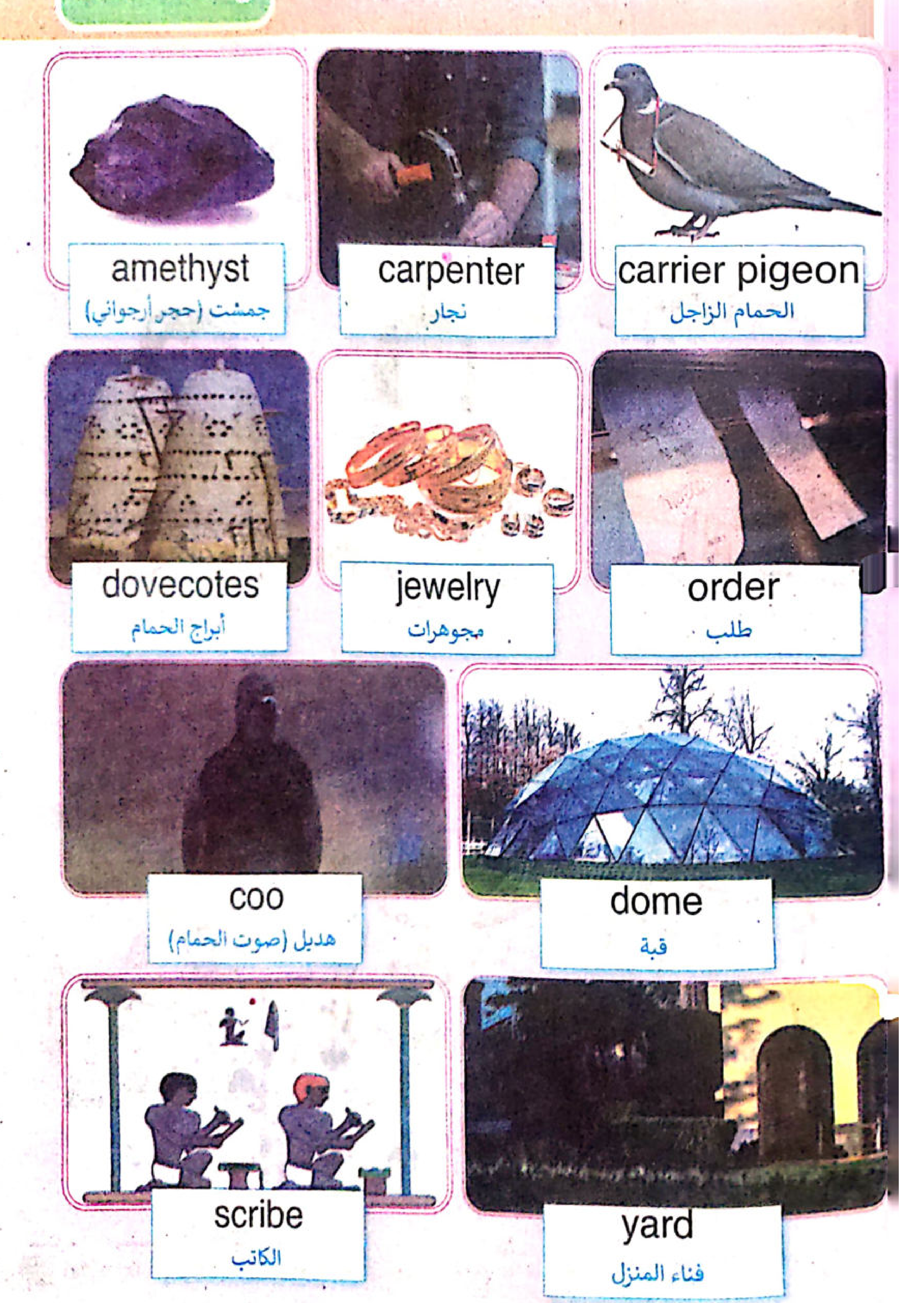
Mr. Akhon
السيد آخون

Amethyst
الحمامة أميثست

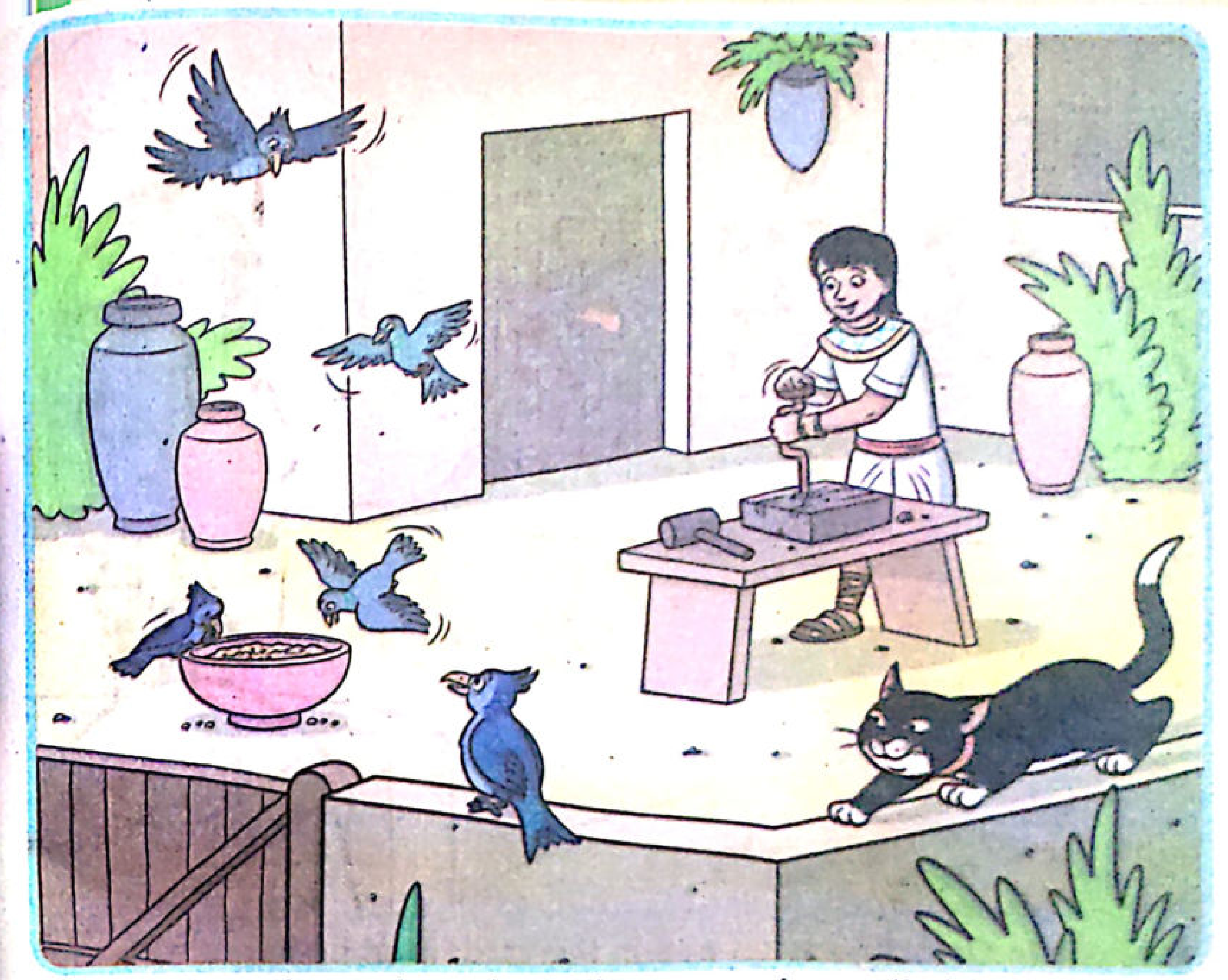
Help your child identify the characters of the story.
ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على شخصيات القصة.

The Story

PICTURE DICTIONARY



Part (1) Beginning

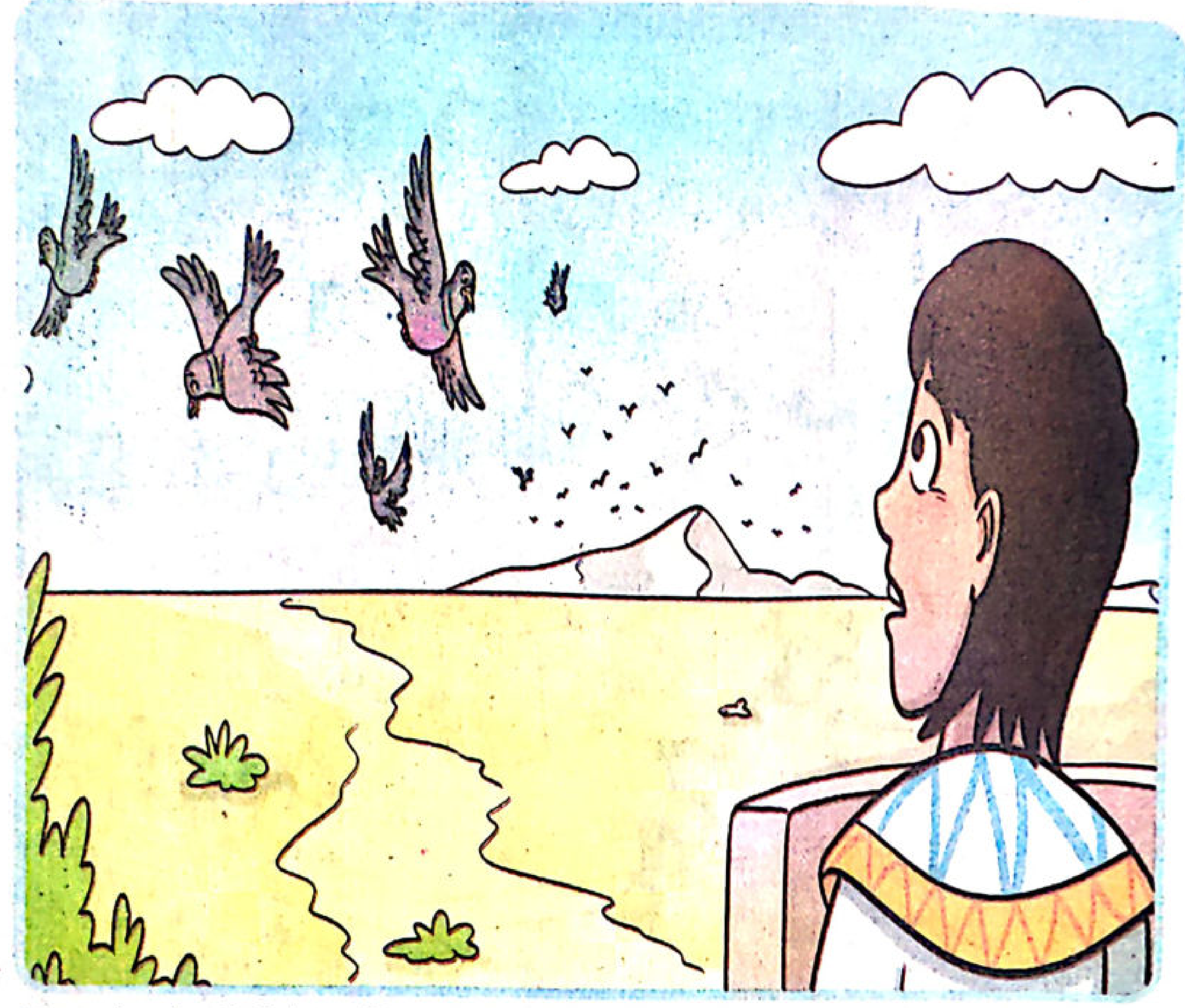


Once upon a time, a long, long, time ago, a boy called Atemu lived in the Nile Delta. His home was in a small village, and he lived with his parents and his big sister, Nedjem. Atemu was twelve, but he didn't go to school. His father worked as a carpenter. He was teaching Atemu how to make things from wood.

Atemu loved animals, especially birds. He liked to watch the birds that came into his yard. Every day, Atemu gave some grain to the birds. He enjoyed watching them eat. Often, his sister's cat came into the yard and watched the birds, too. It sometimes jumped at the birds, but it never caught them. It was a very slow cat.

كان يا ما كان، منذ زمن بعيد، عاش صبي يدعى أتيمو في دلتا النيل. كان منزله في قرية صغيرة، وكان يعيش مع والديه وأخته الكبرى نيجم. كان أتيمو في الثانية عشرة من عمره، لكنه لم يذهب إلى المدرسة. كان والده يعمل نجارا. وكان يعلم أتيمو كيفية صنع الأشياء من الخشب. كان أتيمو يُحب الحيوانات، وخاصة الطيور. كان يحب مشاهدة الطيور التي تأتي إلى فناء منزله. كل يوم، كان أتيمو يعطي بعض الحبوب للطيور. كان يستمتع بمشاهدتهم وهم يأكلون. في كثير من الأحيان، كانت قطة أخته تأتي إلى الفناء وتراقب الطيور أيضًا. وكانت أحيانًا تقفز على الطيور، لكنها لم تمسك بهم أبدًا. لقد كانت قطة بطيئة جدًا.

Help your child read and follow the events of the story.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يتابع أحداث القصة.



One day in October, Atemu was in the yard when he heard a strange noise. He looked up and saw something amazing. A huge **flock** of birds were flying over his village. They were coming down to a field nearby.

"Mom! Mom!" shouted Atemu. "There are so many birds! Can I go and see them?" His Mom came out of the house and looked. "Wow!" she said. "Yes, you can go."

She filled a bowl with grain. "Here you are," she said kindly. "You can take this for them."

في أحد أيام شهر أكتوبر، كان أتيمو في الفناء عندما سمع ضجيجًا غريبًا. نظر للأعلى ورأى شيئاً مذهلاً. كان سرب ضخم من الطيور يحلق فوق قريته. كانوا ينزلون إلى حقل قريب.

صاح أتيمو: "أمي! أمي! هناك الكثير من الطيور! هل يمكنني الذهاب ورؤيتهم؟" خرجت والدته من المنزل ونظرت وقالت "واو! نعم، يمكنك الذهاب."

ملأت وعاءً بالحبوب وقالت بلطف: "تفضل، يمكنك أن تأخذ هذا لهم."

Help your child read and follow the events of the story.

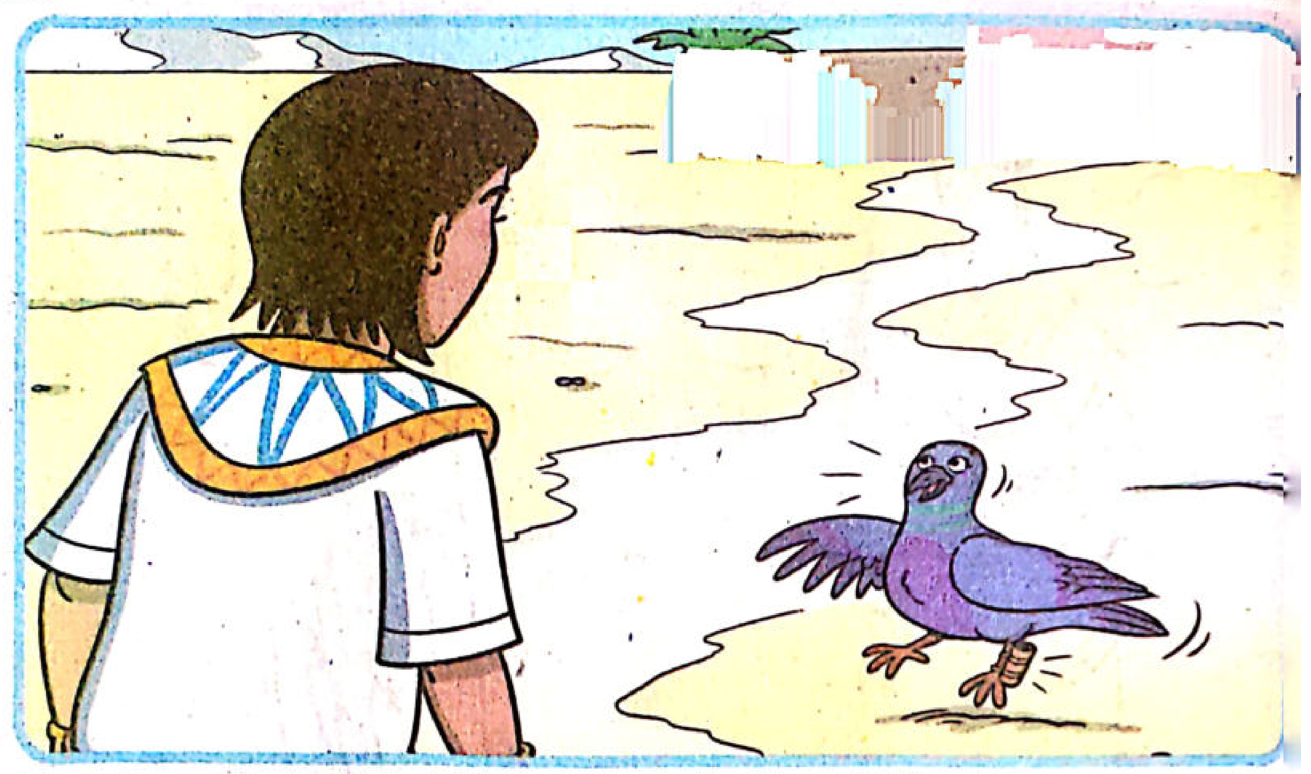
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يتابع أحداث القصة.



When Atemu got to the fields, he couldn't believe his eyes. There were thousands of birds. Every one of them was light gray, with shiny green feathers on its neck and purple feathers on its chest. They were beautiful! They called to each other with a long "whoo" sounds.
Atemu threw the grain to the birds. They ate it hungrily. Then, suddenly, they flew into the sky again. Atemu watched them go.

عندما وصل أتيمو إلى الحقول، لم يصدق عينيه. كان هناك الآلاف من الطيور. كان لون كل واحد منهم رمادي فاتح، وله ريش أخضر لامع على رقبته وريش أرجواني على صدره. كانت طيورًا جميلة! كانوا ينادون بعضهم البعض بأصوات "whoo" الطويلة. ألقى أتيمو الحبوب للطيور. أكلوها بِنَهَم (بشراهة). ثم فجأة طاروا إلى السماء مرة أخرى. شاهدهم أتيمو وهم يذهبون.

Help your child read and follow the events of the story.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يتابع أحداث القصة.



Then he noticed a bird at his feet. It was looking at him. "Coo, coo, coo, coo," it went.
"I don't have any grain for you, bird," said Atemu.
"Coo, coo, coo, coo," went the bird.
The noise was different from the other birds. It looked different too. First, it was bigger. The other birds had yellow beaks, but this bird's beak was dark gray. This bird also had stripes on its wings. Atemu could see something strange on its leg, too.
Just then, Atemu heard his mother calling him.
Atemu started walking quickly, but he could hear the bird behind him. It was following him!
"Why don't you fly with your friends?" said Atemu, but the bird just cooed.

ثم لاحظ طائرًا عند قدميه. كان ينظر إليه، وكان يصيح باستمرار "كو، كو،كو، كو"
قال أتيمو: "ليس لدي أي حبوب لك أيها الطائر".
صاح الطائر "كو، كو،كو، كو"
كان الصوت مختلفًا عن الطيور الأخرى. بدا الطائر مختلفًا أيضًا. أولًا، كان أكبر حجمًا. كانت الطيور الأخرى مناقيرها صفراء، أما منقار هذا الطائر فكان لونه رمادي داكن. وكان لهذا الطائر أيضًا خطوط على جناحيه. استطاع أتيمو أن يرى شيئًا غريبًا على ساقه أيضًا.
وعندئذ سمع أتيمو والدته تناديه.
بدأ أتيمو بالمشي بسرعة، لكنه كان يسمع الطائر خلفه. لقد كان يتبعه!
قال أتيمو "لماذا لا تطير مع أصدقائك؟" ولكن كان الطائر فقط يهدل.

Help your child read and follow the events of the story.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يتابع أحداث القصة.

Activities

1 Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Atemu lived in a big town. ( )
2. Nedjem was Atemu's older sister. ( )
3. Atemu was ten years old. ( )
4. Atemu went to school. ( )
5. Atemu's father made things from wood. ( )
6. Atemu had a cat. ( )
7. The birds called to each other with a short "whoo" sound. ( )

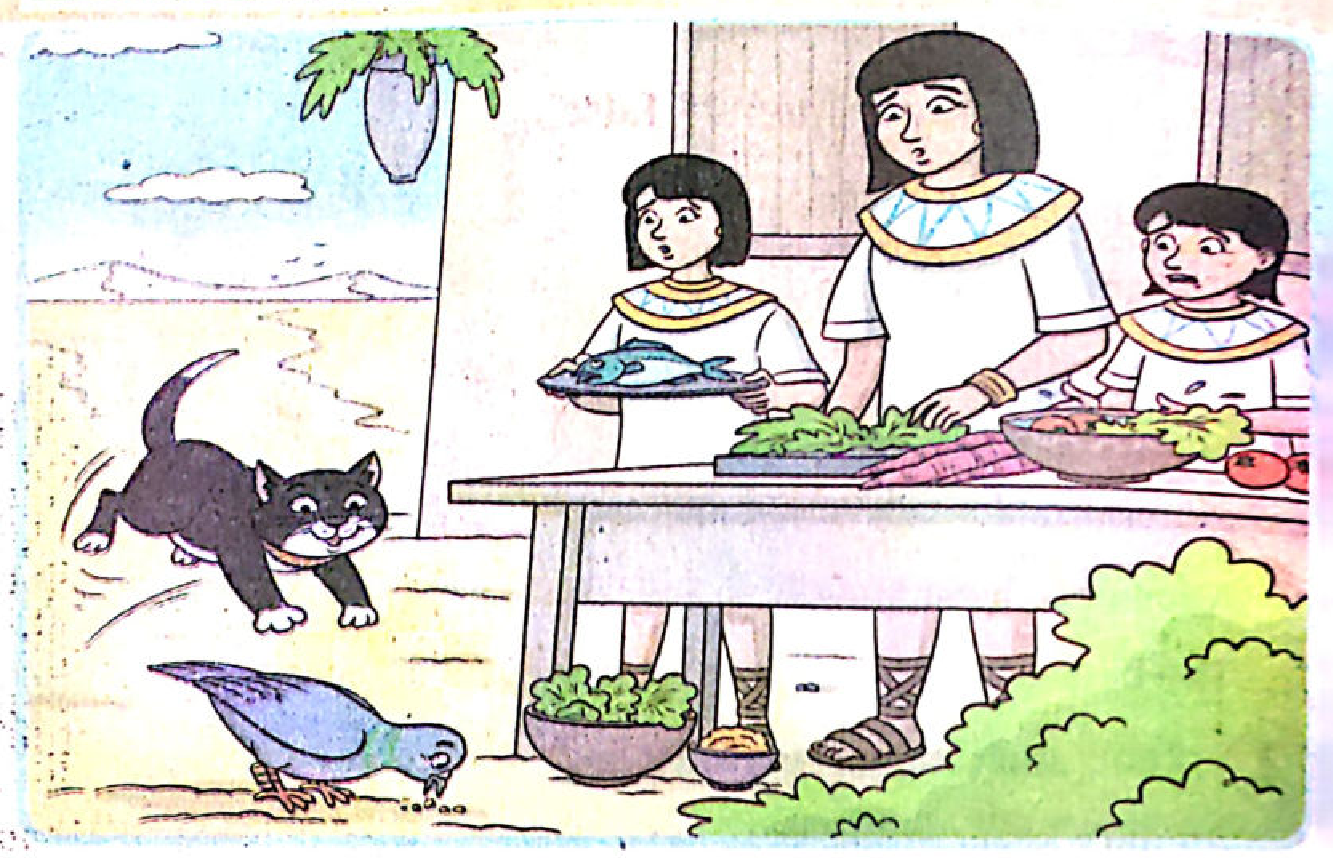
2 Read and complete the following.

1. Atemu's father worked as a ....
2. Atemu gave some .... to the birds.
3. A huge .... of birds were flying over his village.
4. All the birds were light .... , with shiny green .... on their necks.
5. Atemu lived in the ....
6. Atemu's father was teaching him to make things from ....
7. Atemu's mother filled a bowl with ....

3 Answer the following questions.

1. What is the story mainly about? ....
2. When and where did the story happen? ....
3. Where did Atemu live? ....
4. How old was Atemu? ....
5. How did the birds call each other? ....
6. What did Atemu throw to the birds? ....
7. What did the bird have on its wings? ....
8. How was the cat? ....

Part (2) The Middle



When Atemu got to his yard, the bird came in after him. He watched it while he cleaned vegetables for dinner.
Then he saw Nedjem's cat. It was watching the bird, too.
Suddenly, the cat jumped on the bird! But the bird didn't fly away.
Nedjem ran and picked up the cat.
"You should catch rats and snakes, not birds!" she said.
"What's wrong with that bird? It can't fly," said their mother. "Is it hurt?"
"Maybe!" said Atemu. "It didn't fly with the other birds." Atemu walked to the bird.
When he touched its left wing, it made a quiet sound.
"I think its wing is hurt," said Atemu.

عندما وصل أتيمو إلى فناء منزله، دخل الطائر بعده. كان يشاهده بينما كان ينظف الخضار لتناول العشاء.
ثم رأى قطة نيجم. وكانت تراقب الطائر أيضاً.
وفجأةً قفزت القطة على الطائر! لكن الطائر لم يطر بعيدًا.
ركضت نيجم والتقطت القطة.
قالت "يجب أن تصطاد الفئران والثعابين، وليس الطيور!".
قالت والدتهم: "ما مشكلة هذا الطائر؟ لا يمكنه الطيران. هل هو مُصاب؟".
قال أتيمو "ربما! لم يطر مع الطيور الأخرى." مشى أتيمو نحو الطائر.
عندما لمس جناحه الأيسر، أصدر صوتًا هادئًا.
قال أتيمو: "أعتقد أن جناحه مُصاب".

Help your child read and follow the events of the story.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يتابع أحداث القصة.



When Atemu's father came home, Atemu showed him the bird. "It has a hurt wing, and there is something on its leg."

"Poor bird!" said his father. "What is that?" He took the object from the bird's leg.

It was a very small wooden box. Atemu's father opened it. A piece of papyrus paper was inside.

"It's a message!" said Atemu's father. "This bird is a carrier pigeon."

"What's a carrier pigeon?" asked Atemu.

عندما عاد والد أتيمو إلى المنزل، أراه أتيمو الطائر وقال «إن له جناحًا مُصابًا وهناك شئ ما على ساقه".

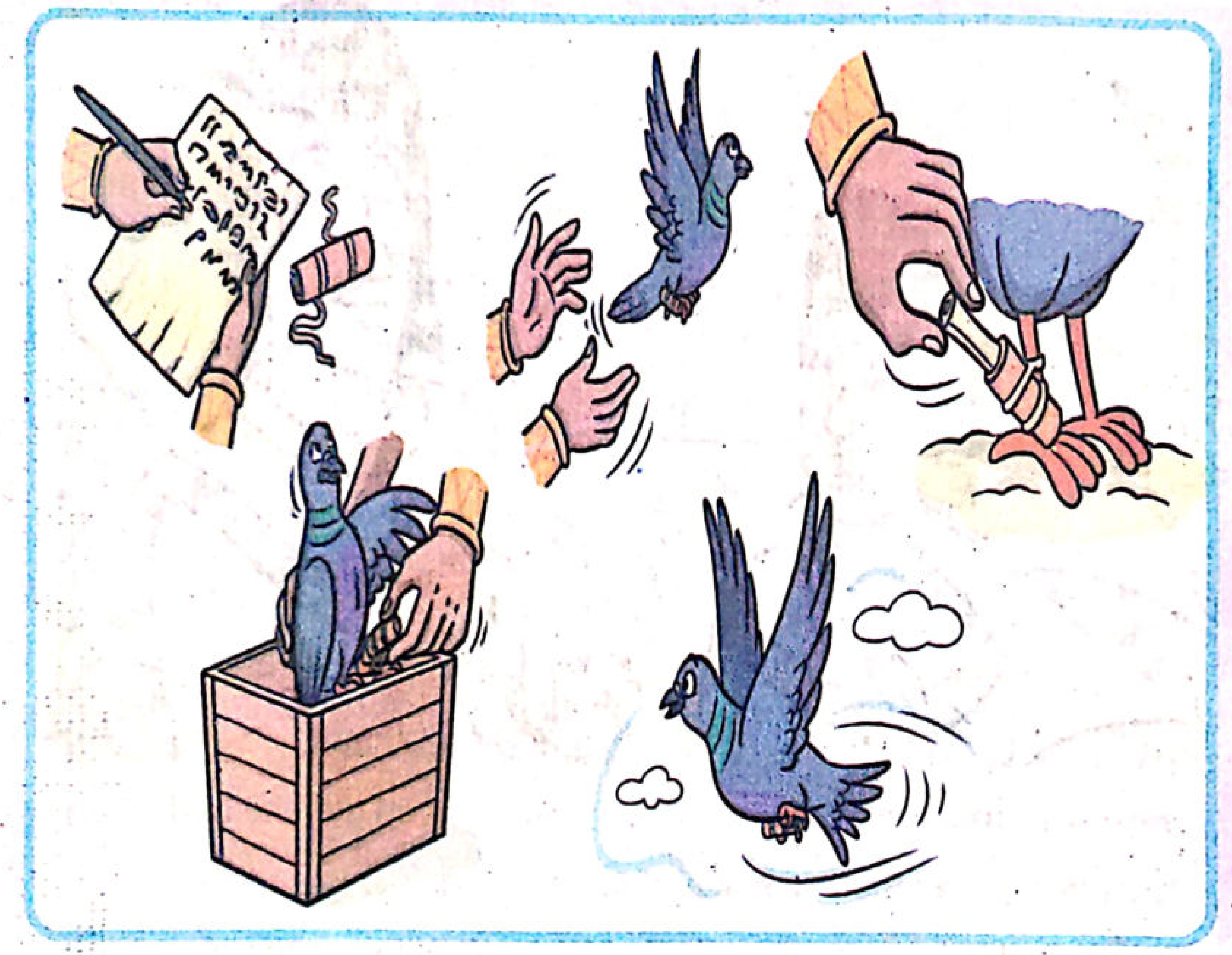
قال والده "طائر مسكين!" "ما هذا؟" و أخذ الشيء من ساق الطائر.

لقد كان صندوقًا خشبيًا صغيرًا جدًا. فتحه والد أتيمو. وكانت هناك قطعة من ورق البردي بداخله.

قال والد أتيمو "إنها رسالة!" "هذا الطائر هو حمامة زاجلة."

سأل أتيمو "ما هو الحمام الزاجل؟"

Help your child read and follow the events of the story.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يتابع أحداث القصة.



"It's a bird which carries messages," said his father. "Important people in the city keep pigeons. The pigeons learn where they live. Then people take the pigeons to new places. When there is news from that place, they attach the message to the pigeon. It flies home and carries the message. That's why they're called carrier pigeons."

"That's very clever!" said Atemu. "So, what does this message say?"

"I don't know," said his father. "I'll take it to my friend, the scribe."

قال والده: "إنه طائر يحمل الرسائل الأشخاص المهمون في المدينة يربون الحمام. يتعلم الحمام أين يعيشون. ثم يأخذ الناس الحمام إلى أماكن جديدة. عندما يكون هناك أخبار من ذلك المكان، يعلقون الرسالة على الحمامة. وتطير إلى المنزل وتحمل الرسالة. ولهذا السبب يطلق عليهم الحمام الزاجل."

قال أتيمو "هذا ذكي جدًا! إذن ماذا تقول هذه الرسالة؟"

قال والده: "لا أعرف سأخذها إلى صديقي الكاتب."

Help your child read and follow the events of the story.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يتابع احداث القصة.



Atemu looked after the pigeon. He made it a high table which the cat couldn't jump onto. He gave it water and grain and talked to it. The pigeon cooed back happily. Atemu's father went to the city. Three days later he came home. "Did you speak to the scribe?" said Atemu.
"Yes," said his father. "The message was for a jewelry merchant in the city, Mr Akhon. I took him the message, and he was very happy! It was an order for a lot of gold jewelry from the capital city. It was very important for him."
"Mr Akhon also wants his pigeon. We'll take it to him next week." "Yes, father," Atemu said quietly. For the next week, Atemu looked after the pigeon. The pigeon started to fly again. Every morning, it flew to the roof where Atemu slept and cooed to him. Atemu was very happy to have a new pigeon friend. "I don't want you to go home," he said to it quietly.

اعتنى أتيمو بالحمامة. لقد صنع لها طاولة عالية لا تستطيع القطة القفز عليها.
وأعطاها الماء والحبوب وتحدث معها. وكانت الحمامة تهدل له بسعادة.
ذهب والد أتيمو إلى المدينة. وبعد ثلاثة أيام عاد إلى المنزل.
قال أتيمو "هل تحدثت مع الكاتب؟" . قال والده: "نعم. كانت الرسالة موجهة إلى تاجر مجوهرات في المدينة، السيد آخون. أخذت له الرسالة وكان سعيدًا جدًا! لقد كان طلبًا للكثير من المجوهرات الذهبية من العاصمة. لقد كان الأمر مهمًا للغاية بالنسبة له. يريد السيد آخون أيضًا حمامته. سنأخذها إليه الأسبوع المقبل."
قال أتيمو بهدوء: "نعم يا أبي." وعلى مدار الأسبوع التالي، اعتنى أتيمو بالحمامة. بدأت الحمامة تطير مرة أخرى. و كل صباح كانت تطير إلى السطح حيث ينام أتيمو وتهدل له. كان أتيمو سعيدًا للغاية بوجود الحمامة صديقته الجديدة. قال لها بهدوء: "لا أريدك أن تعودي إلى المنزل".



The next Sunday, Atemu and his father got into their boat to go to the city. The pigeon sat on Atemu's shoulder.
Atemu was excited because it was his first trip to the city, but he was also sad. It was his last day with the pigeon.
But he forgot about that when he saw the houses of the city. There were so many and some of the houses were very big! Some houses had white **domes** with many small holes in the yard or on the roof.
"What are they?" asked Atemu.
"Those are **dovecotes**." said Atemu's father. "Dovecotes are special houses for pigeons."

وفي يوم الأحد التالي، ركب أتيمو ووالده قاربهم للذهاب إلى المدينة. جلست الحمامة على كتف أتيمو.
كان أتيمو متحمسًا لأنها كانت رحلته الأولى إلى المدينة، لكنه كان حزينًا أيضًا. كان يومه الأخير مع الحمامة.
لكنه نسي ذلك عندما رأى بيوت المدينة. كان هناك الكثير وكانت بعض المنازل كبيرة جدًا! وكان لبعض المنازل قباب بيضاء بها العديد من الثقوب الصغيرة في الفناء أو على السطح.
سأل أتيمو "ما هذا؟"
قال والد أتيمو "تلك هي أبراج الحمام. أبراج الحمام هي بيوت خاصة للحمام."

Help your child read and follow the events of the story.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يتابع احداث القصة.



1 Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Atemu watched the pigeon while he cleaned fruits. ( )
2. Nedjem ran and picked up the cat. ( )
3. The pigeon had a hurt leg. ( )
4. There was a very small box in the pigeon's leg. ( )
5. The bird was a carrier falcon. ( )
6. Atemu's father took the message to the scribe. ( )
7. Dovecotes are special houses for pigeons. ( )

2 Read and complete the following.

1. Important people in the city keep ....
2. The bird's .... was hurt.
3. The bird was a .... pigeon.
4. The message was for a jewelry .... in the city.
5. Some houses had white ....
6. .... are special houses for pigeons.
7. Atemu was .... because it was his first trip to the city.

3 Answer the following questions.

1. Why did Atemu's father take the message to the scribe? ....
2. How did Atemu look after the pigeon? ....
3. Why was the message important for Mr Akhon? ....
4. Why would Atemu and his father take the pigeon to Mr Akhon? ....
5. Why couldn't the bird fly? ....
6. What did the bird have on its leg? ....
7. What kind of bird was it? ....
8. Who was Mr Akhon? ....

Part (3) The End



Finally, they arrived at a large house. "We're here!" Atemu's father said. A smiling man came to meet them. He was wearing a lot of jewelry. Atemu knew it was the merchant.

"Welcome to my home!" Mr Akhon said. "Thank you so much for finding my message. It was from my most important customer. And thanks for looking after my pigeon. Her name is Amethyst – because her feathers are the same color as these purple stones. She is my best bird!"

"She was hurt," said Atemu.

"I see," said the merchant. Can she fly now?"

"Yes," said Atemu. "She's much better."

"Come with me then. I'll show you where she lives."

وأخيرا وصلوا إلى منزل كبير. قال والد أتيمو "ها قد وصلنا!" .

جاء رجل مبتسم لمقابلتهم. كان يرتدي الكثير من المجوهرات. عرف أتيمو أنه التاجر.

قال السيد آخون "أهلًا وسهلًا بكم في منزلي! شكرًا جزيلاً لك على العثور على رسالتي. لقد كانت الرسالة من أهم عميل لدي. وشكرًا على رعايتك لحمامتي. اسمها أميثست – لأن ريشها من نفس لون هذه الحجارة الأرجوانية. إنها أفضل الطيور لدي!"

قال أتيمو: "لقد كانت مُصابة".

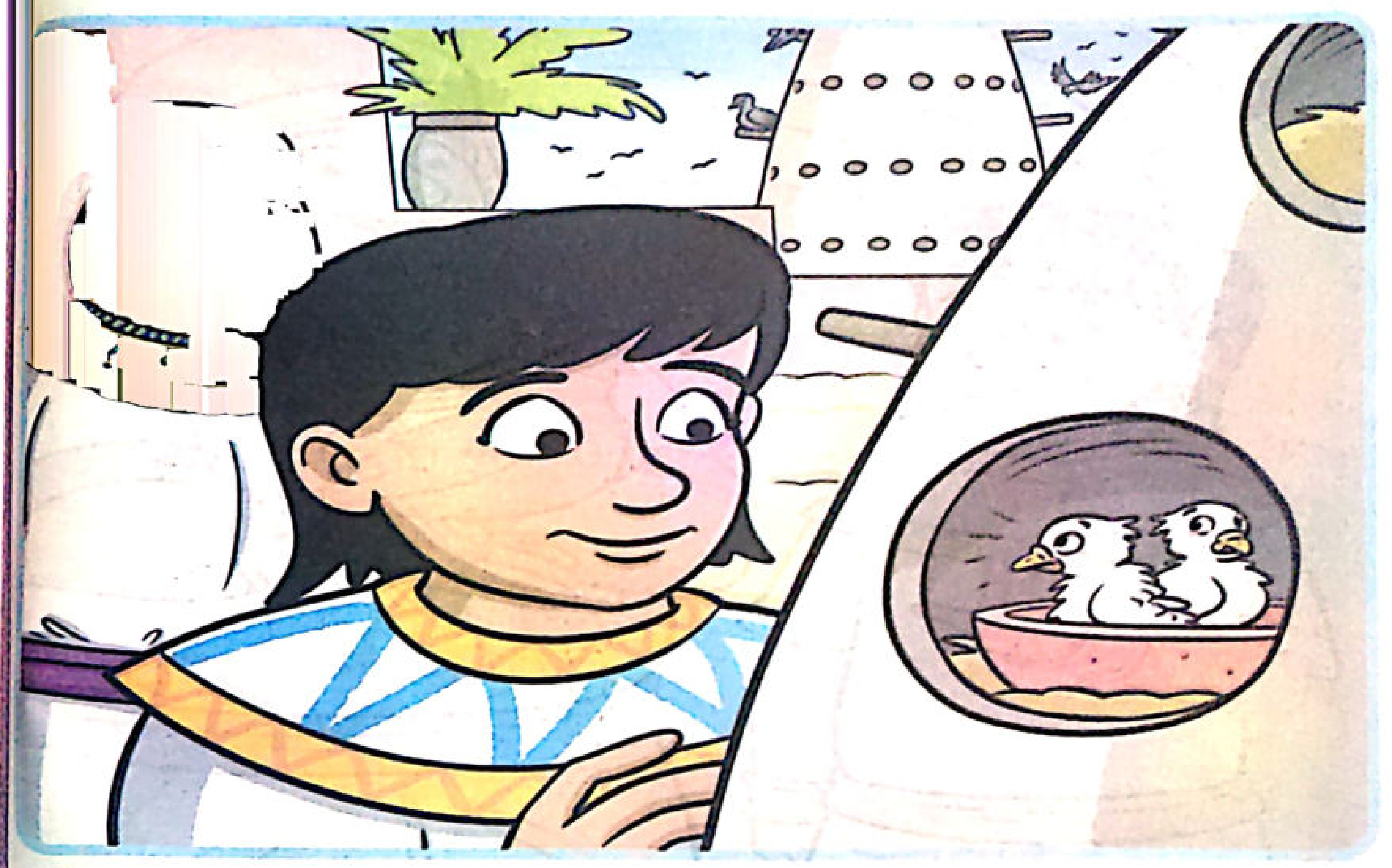
قال التاجر: "أفهم ذلك. هل يمكنها الطيران الآن؟"

قال أتيمو: "نعم. إنها أفضل بكثير."

"تعالوا معي إذن. سأريكم أين تعيش ".

Help your child read and follow the events of the story.

ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يتابع أحداث القصة.



Atemu and his father followed Mr Akhon into his yard. At one side, there were three tall dovecotes. "My birds will come home soon," the merchant said.

"How many do you have?" said Atemu.

"Oh, a lot." said Mr Akhon.

"They have a lot of babies, so I don't know exactly."

Atemu looked into a dovecote. He could see some baby birds. "They're so cute!" Atemu said.

"It's time to go, son," said Atemu's father. "Say goodbye to the bird."

تبع أتيمو ووالده السيد آخون إلى فناء منزله. على أحد الجوانب، كان هناك ثلاثة أبراج حمام طويلة.

قال التاجر: "ستعود طيوري إلى المنزل قريبًا".

قال أتيمو "كم لديك؟".

قال السيد آخون "أوه، الكثير." .

"لديهم الكثير من الصغار، لذلك لا أعرف بالضبط."

نظر أتيمو إلى أحد أبراج الحمام. واستطاع رؤية بعض الطيور الصغيرة. قال أتيمو "إنها لطيفة جدًا!".

قال والد أتيمو: "حان وقت الرحيل يا بني قل وداعًا للطائر."



"Goodbye Amethyst," said Atemu, softly. He touched her purple feathers, and she cooed. He was very sad, but he tried to smile. The merchant was a kind man. He spoke to Atemu.
"You say Amethyst got well again, but she didn't fly home."
"Yes" said Atemu. "Well, I think she'll be happy to stay with you now."
"Oh wow!" said Atemu. "Thank you so much." He looked at Amethyst, and she jumped onto his shoulder.
"She'll need a small house," said Mr Akhon.
"I can make one!" said Atemu. "I'm learning to be a carpenter."
"I'll help you," said his dad.

قال أتيمو بهدوء: "وداعًا يا أميثست". لمس ريشها الأرجواني، فهدلت. كان حزينًا جدًا، لكنه حاول أن يبتسم.
وكان التاجر رجلاً طيباً. و تحدث إلى أتيمو. "أنت تقول أن أميثست تحسنت مرة أخرى، لكنها لم تعد إلى المنزل."
قال أتيمو "نعم".
قال السيد آخون "حسنًا، أعتقد أنها ستكون سعيدة بالبقاء معك الآن."
قال أتيمو "أوه واو! شكراً جزيلاً." نظر إلى أميثست، وقفزت على كتفه.
قال السيد آخون: "ستحتاج إلى منزل صغير".
قال أتيمو "أستطيع أن أصنع واحدًا! أنا أتعلم أن أكون نجارًا."
قال والده: "سوف أساعدك".

Help your child read and follow the events of the story.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يتابع أحداث القصة.

On the boat home, Atemu's father said, "Mr Akhon is a very good man. He gave you his best bird!"

Atemu said, "Yes. How can I thank him?"

"You could ask the scribe to write a thank you letter for you," said his father.

"Good idea!" said Atemu"And Amethyst can take it to him!"

قال والد أتيمو وهما على متن القارب عائدين إلى المنزل. "السيد آخون رجل طيب للغاية. لقد أعطاك أفضل طائر لديه!"

قال أتيمو. "نعم. كيف يمكنني أن أشكره؟"

قال والده: "يمكنك أن تطلب من الكاتب أن يكتب لك رسالة شكر".

قال أتيمو "فكره جيدة! ويمكن لأميثست أن تأخذها إليه!"

Help your child read and follow the events of the story.
ساعد طفلك أن يقرأ و يتابع أحداث القصة.





1 Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Atemu and his father went to the city by car.
2. Atemu was sad because it was the last day with the pigeon.
3. Some of the houses were very small.
4. Dovecotes are special houses for pigeons.
5. Mr Akhon didn't thank Atemu.
6. The message was from an important customer.
7. Atemu was happy to take the pigeon home.

2 Read and complete the following.

1. Mr Akhon was wearing a lot of ....
2. The pigeon's name was .... because she had purple feathers.
3. Mr Akhon's pigeons had a lot of cute ....
4. Mr Akhon told Atemu to make a .... for the pigeon.
5. The baby birds were so ....
6. The merchant was a .... man.
7. The pigeon jumped on Atemu's ....

3 Answer the following questions.

1. Why did Mr Akhon say thank you to Atemu? ....
2. Why did Mr Akhon give Atemu the pigeon? ....
3. Why did Atemu's father say Mr Akhon was a good man? ....
4. What was Mr Akhon wearing? ....
5. What's the pigeon's name? ....
6. What did Mr Akhon show Atemu and his father? ....
7. What would Atemu make for the pigeon? ....
8. How could Atemu thank Mr Akhon? ....

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

General Activities

1 Put the story events in the correct order.

1. Atemu had never been to the city. ( )
2. Atemu fed the huge flock of birds some grain. ( )
3. Atemu gave the bird and message to Mr Akhon. ( )
4. The bird had a box on its leg. It was a carrier pigeon. ( )
5. One bird had a gray beak. Its wing was hurt. ( )
6. Atemu made a table for the bird. ( )
7. Mr. Akhon gave Amethyst to Atemu. ( )

2 Complete the sentences with the words.

home - leg - news - orders - pigeons

1. Important people in Ancient Egypt often kept carrier ....
2. Carrier pigeons can learn where their .... is.
3. Carrier pigeons often carried .... from one place to another city.
4. People used carrier pigeons to send .... to merchants.
5. People attached their messages to the pigeon's ....

3 Who says this in the story? Read and write the names.

Atemu - Atemu's father - Atemu's mother - Nedjem

1. "I think its wing is hurt," (.....................................)
2. "You should catch rats and snakes, not birds!" (.....................................)
3. "It can't fly," (.....................................)
4. "That's very clever!" (.....................................)
5. "I'll take it to my friend, the scribe." (.....................................)



4 Complete the paragraph with the past simple form of the verbs.

Atemu loved birds. Every day, birds .... (come) into his yard, and Atemu .... (give) them grain. His sister's cat watched the birds, too, but it never .... (catch) them. One day, Atemu .... (hear) a strange noise in the sky. A lot of birds were flying into a field near his home. Atemu went to the field and .... (throw) grain to the birds. The birds .... (eat) the grain and then .... (fly) away. But one bird was different. It stayed on the ground.

5 Complete the paragraph. Check your answers in the story.

All of the birds were light gray, with green feathers on their .... and .... feathers on their chests. But one bird was a little different. It was .... than the other birds. They had .... beaks, but its beak was .... It also sounded different. The .... the other birds made was a long "whoo", but it went "coo coo". It had .... on its wings, but they didn't.



6 Complete the sentences with the words.

Amethyst - carpenter - domes - jewelry - order - pigeons - yard

1. My uncle keeps .... on his roof. They're his favorite birds.
2. Our house has a big .... where we have barbecues in nice weather.
3. That .... makes excellent wooden furniture.
4. .... was a very popular stone with Pharaohs in Ancient Egypt.
5. If the restaurant loses your .... , you won't get any food.
6. People often wear .... when they want to look good.
7. What's that building with big glass .... on the roof?

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.

Activities on Review (4)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Next month, Nadia is going on a ....
   a) journey b) trip c) tour d) voyage
2. She's going to see the birds and animals which live near the ....
   a) hill b) water c) mountain d) cliff
3. They'll travel along the river in small ....
   a) ships b) buses c) planes d) boats
4. They mustn't swim because there might be ....
   a) fish b) crabs c) crocodiles d) snakes

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Eco-tourism is more .... than traditional tourism.
   a) simple b) easy c) dangerous d) sustainable
2. Animals need safe places to find ....
   a) food b) babies c) sugar d) flour
3. My neighbor has always been .... to us. We like him.
   a) unkind b) cruel c) kind d) angry
4. We're using nature cameras to .... wildlife.
   a) paint b) draw c) grow d) film

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

must - habitats - well - mustn't - eco-tourism

I love going on vacation, but I think 1)..................... is a more sustainable way to travel. We learned about it in geography today and our teacher explained it really 2)...................... For example, you 3)..................... throw litter on beaches because this can make animals sick. I love watching birds and other animals in their natural 4).................................

4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Once upon a time, there was a little red hen who really liked to work. Every day she planted seeds in her beautiful garden, and waited for her plants to grow. She had three great friends: a mouse, a cat, and a dog, but all three of them were very lazy! One day, the little red hen was really tired, so she asked the mouse, the cat, and the dog to help her plant some wheat. They all said "No!" She decided to bake a big chocolate cake. No one wanted to help her bake the cake, but they wanted to eat it with the hen! "Can we help you eat the cake, please, Hen?" but the hen said, " As you plant, you shall collect."

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The hen liked to ....

   a) play b) sleep c) work d) sing

2. The underlined pronoun "she" refers to the ....

   a) dog b) hen c) mouse d) cat

3. All her friends were ....

   a) active b) lazy c) clever d) smart

B) Answer the following questions.

4. What do we learn from the story? ....
5. What did the hen plant in her garden? ....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. family - my - I - with - visiting - this - place - love - .

   ....

2. distances - Migrating - long - fly - very - birds - .

   ....

3. charity - children's - We - decided - start up - to - a local - .

   ....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. If she .... (feel) thirsty, she will drink some water.
2. I went to the sports center yesterday to .... (played) volleyball.

7 Punctuate the following.

- why do the old people use a multi-grip ....

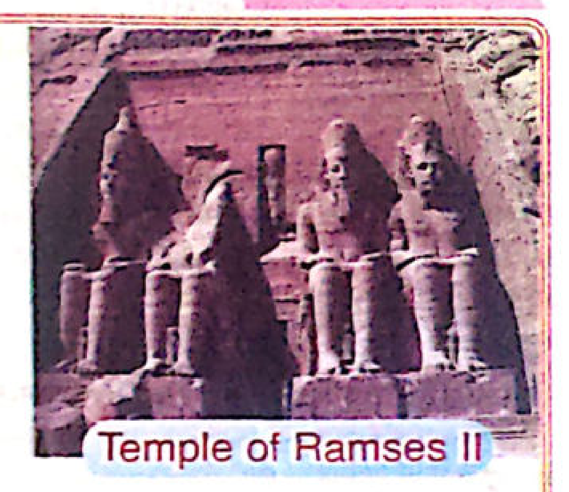
8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about "A habitat":

Guiding elements:

- What is a habitat? - How many types of habitats are there in Egypt?

Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.


Temple of Ramses II

Ramses II was a great Egyptian King. When he was very young, his father Sethi became the Pharaoh of Egypt. Later on, when he was around 10, young Ramses helped his father rule the country.

By the time he was 20 years old, Ramses was a great soldier. In 1290 BCE, he became Pharaoh and leader of the Egyptian armies. He won many battles and every time he won, Ancient Egypt got more land and became bigger and more powerful.

One of the most famous battles was the Battle of Kadesh in 1279 BCE. Ramses won and became a hero. However, sixteen years later, Ramses made peace with his Hittite neighbors. He was the first ruler ever to sign a written peace treaty.

Ramses liked building splendid monuments. His most famous temple is the one at Abu Simbel, where you can see four enormous statues of him at the entrance.

Ramses II lived to be about 90 years old. When he died around 1233 BCE, he was first buried in the Valley of the Kings, but today Ramses's Mummy is in the National Museum of Egyptian Civilization.

كان رمسيس الثاني ملكًا مصريًا عظيمًا. عندما كان صغيرًا جدًا، أصبح والده سيتي فرعون مصر. لاحقا، عندما كان عمره حوالي ١٠ سنوات، ساعد رمسيس الشاب والده في حكم البلد. وقبل بلوغه سن العشرين، كان رمسيس جنديًا رائعًا. في ١٢٩٠ قبل الميلاد، أصبح فرعون وقائد الجيوش المصرية. لقد فاز بالعديد من المعارك، وفي كل مرة يفوز بها، كانت مصر القديمة تحصل على المزيد من الأراضي وأصبحت أكبر وأكثر قوة. واحدة من المعارك الأكثر شهرة كانت معركة قادش في ١٢٧٩ قبل الميلاد. فاز رمسيس وأصبح بطلاً. ومع ذلك، بعد ستة عشر عامًا، أقام رمسيس السلام مع جيرانه الحيثيين. كان أول حاكم على الإطلاق يوقع على معاهدة سلام مكتوبة. أحب رمسيس بناء الآثار الرائعة. معبده الأكثر شهرة هو معبد أبو سمبل، حيث يمكنك رؤية أربعة تماثيل هائلة له عند المدخل. عاش رمسيس الثاني تقريبًا لسن ٩٠ عامًا. عندما توفي حوالي عام ١٢٣٣ قبل الميلاد، تم دفنه لأول مرة في وادي الملوك، لكن مومياء رمسيس اليوم موجودة في المتحف القومي للحضارة المصرية.

Listening Texts

Unit (7)

Lesson (1)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

We have a hot, dry climate here in Egypt, so artifacts aren't damaged by cold and wet weather. This helps to preserve them. The Ancient Egyptians also knew that certain materials could last a long time. That's why they built the Pyramids with granite, a very hard and durable stone.

Lesson (2)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

Today, cats are still popular pets in Egypt. Other animals that people keep today include turtles, fish, and birds, which are much smaller and easier to look after than baboons and crocodiles. I adore cats.

Lesson (3)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

One of the most beautiful artifacts from Ancient Egypt is Tutankhamun's mask, which was found in his tomb. The mask is gold, with blue lines between gold lines. Under his chin is a thin beard. There is also a snake on the top of his head.

Lessons (4 & 5)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

The Ancient Egyptians used iron for small items, like jewelry. Copper and bronze were common metals for tools because they were easier to find. But later on, iron agricultural tools and weapons began to appear. This was the result of the Ancient Egyptians getting more iron through trade with other countries.

Activities on Unit (7)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

The Ancient Egyptians traded with other countries, and metal was one thing they traded. They first found metal in rocks. Metal was harder than rocks. They could melt it into different shapes. They used metal to make tools and weapons.

Unit (8)

Lesson (1)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

Fares and Yaseen are cousins. They visited their grandma on the weekend. They found a box of old toys at grandma's house. There was an action figure and a train set. Fares loved playing with a train set when he was younger. Yassen didn't have a train set, but his sister had a doll's house. They both played with it.

Lesson (2)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

When Amina was little, she really liked games that used a lot of imagination. She was very good at making up stories. She had a doll's house, some cuddly toys, and some action figures.

Lesson (3)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

Ali was shopping with his parents at the market. He saw a stall that sold toys. A man showed him how a train moved. Ali thought the toys were amazing. Ali's dad came to see the toys, too. He liked the train, so he bought it. He said Ali could play with it.

Lessons (4 & 5)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

My favorite games are video games. I don't play them very often, though. I play for about an hour on the weekend. It's fun! My favorite games are ones where you build cities. I've made a really big city using different bricks. It has animals and plants in it, too. I like these games because you can be creative and make something new.

Activities on Unit (8)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

When I was younger, I had a box of toys. There was an action figure. I loved playing with it. I made up lots of games for my action figures. I also had rollerblades. I had a go on them. My sister had a doll's house. She liked playing with it. I played board games with my brother, but he usually beat me.

Unit (9)

Lesson (1)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

I'm writing a review of one of Goha's stories. The one about a man who goes to the market with his son and a donkey. The setting is the countryside, many years ago. Two of the characters – the man and his son – take turns riding the donkey because it's a long journey.

Lesson (2)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

My name's Tom. I'm 11 years old and I'm from the USA. My favorite things are space, animals, and the color blue. What are your favorite things? Please email back to tell me!
My email address is tom@beachnet.usa

Lesson (3)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

Once upon a time there was once a boy who looked after some sheep. The boy was bored. One day, he played a trick on the villagers. He shouted "Wolf"! The villagers came up the hill to save the sheep. When they went to the sheep, there was no wolf. It was a joke.

Lessons (4 & 5)

- Listen and circle the correct from a, b, c or d.

My name is Hugo and I live in Biarritz, France. I live on the coast and I love sailing my boat. Last week, I was sailing when I saw something in the water – your message in a bottle! This means it traveled over 6,000 kilometers.

Activities on Unit (9)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

Yesterday, I was on the beach near my house. It was morning and it was sunny. I was walking with my friend when we saw a big whale. We were scared.

Activities on Review (3)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

Playing is good for us in lots of different ways. When we play, we feel happy. We also learn about the world and ourselves. When we play, we learn to solve problems and make friends.

Unit (10)

Lesson (1)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

"The early bird catches the worm." This proverb has more than one meaning. It tells us that a bird that is early, or the first to try to catch a worm, usually catches it. So, it also means that to be successful, you need to be the first to do something.

Lesson (2)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

Hi, I'm Adam. I love visiting the desert with my family. We went last year, and in the evenings, we saw lots of wildlife when the sun went down. More animals live on the sand than you might think. This year we'll stay outside and cook meals under the stars, so we must bring a tent. Then we'll walk in small groups to see the wildlife around us.

Lesson (3)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

Some birds fly very long distances, making the same journey year after year. Even young birds that migrate for the first time seem to know how to get to the place they need to be. How do these birds know where to go? They might use the sun, the stars, or the things they can see on the way. Scientists have spent a long time trying to find out how they do this!

Lessons (4 & 5)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

The Ras Mohammed National Park on the Red Sea is a fantastic area for locals and tourists to visit. This beautiful area on the Sinai Peninsula is famous for its sea life, warm water, and amazing weather. People come from all over the world to snorkel and scuba dive here.

Activities on Unit (10)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

We can all think about things we can do to protect habitats. For example, we mustn't waste water or drop litter. We can recycle paper, so people don't cut down trees. We can also plant flowers and plants, because these are great for birds and insects.

Unit (11)

Lesson (1)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

My neighbor has always been kind to us. She used to help my mom look after me when I was younger. Now she's getting a bit older, and it's sometimes difficult for her to go shopping. So I ask her what she needs, then I go to the stores and get it. I like to help her.

Lesson (2)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

We're doing a wildlife project at school, and my teacher installed two nature cameras in the forest. We're using them to film wildlife. He put one on the ground to film animals at night. He put the other in a tree to film birds during the day. Then we recorded how many animals and birds we see, and what they're doing.

Lesson (3 A)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

Rawan first started volunteering when she was ten years old. She helps out in the summer group by helping children learn reading. She likes helping children because they are very important to our future. Her advice for teenagers is be patient and try to improve their skills.

Lesson (3 B)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

The older brother planted the seed, and soon a thick, tall plant grew up and up to the moon. The brother climbed up the plant to look for his reward. But when he reached the moon, the plant disappeared. He was alone, and he couldn't go back.

Lessons (4 & 5)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

Fareeda started preparatory school in 2006. Here, she participated in her first volunteer event. She and a team of volunteers did a beach clean-up. In 2010, she organized her first charity event delivering food boxes to families in the community.

Activities on Unit (11)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

I love reading, so I decided to help out in the kindergarten class on a Thursday by reading to the children. I love reading stories with the younger children, and they like it too. We're starting up a project where they think of their own stories next week. I'm looking forward to that.

Activities on Review (4)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

Hi, I'm Nadia. Next month, we're going on a tour to see the birds and animals which live near the water. We'll travel along the river in small boats, and camp in tents at night. We'll bring our cameras, because we'll see some amazing things. We hope to see lizards and turtles, as well as lots of interesting plants. However, we mustn't swim because there might be crocodiles!